

Elk River Watershed Analysis

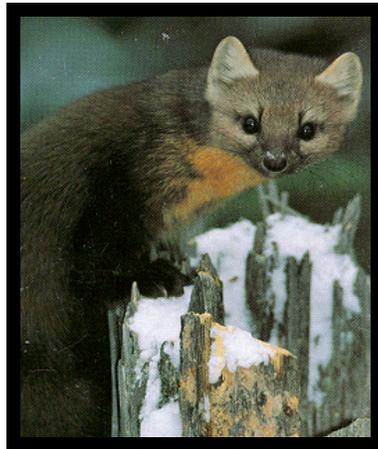
United States
Department
of
Agriculture

Forest
Service

Pacific
Northwest
Region

1998

Iteration 2.0



United States
Department of
Agriculture

Forest Service
Pacific
Northwest
Region

1998



ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS

ITERATION 2.0

I have read this analysis and it meets the Standards and Guidelines for watershed analysis required by an amendment to the Forest Plan (Record of Decision dated April 1994). Any additional evidence needed to make a decision will be gathered site-specifically as part of a NEPA document or as an update to this document.

SIGNED

Carl Linderman

DATE

August 1998

District Ranger
Powers Ranger District
Siskiyou National Forest

Developed by Interdisciplinary Team Members

Max Yager	Team Leader/Fish Biologist
Cindy Ricks	Geologist
Chris Park	Hydrologist
Betsy Howell	Wildlife Biologist
Ruth Esperance	District Planner/Forester
Steve Harbert	Fire Management Officer
Linda Spencer	Civil Engineering Tech
Joe Hallett	Cultural Resource

Key Support

Carl Linderman	District Ranger
Marshall Foster	GIS, Powers Ranger District
Jodi Shorb	Computer Support

For further information, contact:

Powers Ranger District
Powers, OR 97466
(541) 439-3011

The policy of the United States Department of Agriculture Forest Service prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, age, religion, sex, or disability, familial status, or political affiliation. Persons believing they have been discriminated against in any Forest Service related activity should write to: Chief, Forest Service, USDA, P. O. Box 96090, Washington, DC 20090-6090.

ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS
Table Of Contents

INTRODUCTION.....	1
PURPOSE AND OBJECTIVES.....	1
MANAGEMENT CONTEXT.....	1
Southwest Oregon Province	
South Coast Basin	
Elk River	
CHARACTERIZATION	2
Physical Setting	
CHAPTER 1 - ELK RIVER WATERSHED VALUES.....	12
CHAPTER 2 - KEY QUESTIONS	15
CHAPTER 3 - PAST AND CURRENT CONDITIONS, PROCESSES.....	18
COMMODITY VALUES	18
AMENITY VALUES	21
PUBLIC USE VALUES	22
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGICAL VALUES.....	25
TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Vegetation.....	25
TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Subwatershed Discussion	45
TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Wildlife Processes.....	49
AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM - Watershed Level.....	74
AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM - Subwatershed Level.....	93
CHAPTER 4 - CONDITION TRENDS.....	106
COMMODITY VALUES	106
AMENITY VALUES	107
PUBLIC USE VALUES	107
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Terrestrial Ecosystem	107
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Wildlife	108
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Aquatic Ecosystem.....	111
CHAPTER 5 - DESIRED TRENDS AND RECOMMENDED PROJECTS	114
COMMODITY VALUES	114
AMENITY VALUES	114
PUBLIC USE VALUES.....	114
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Terrestrial Ecosystem	114
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Wildlife	117
ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Aquatic Ecosystem.....	117
FINDINGS OF FACT	120
DATA GAPS	122
MANAGEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS	124
REFERENCES	133
APPENDICES	157

ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS
List of Figures

Figure 1: Land Allocations in the Siskiyou National Forest Plan and the Northwest Forest Plan	12
Figure 2: 1927 Commercial Gillnet Fishery Catch Records	19
Figure 3: Elk River Traffic Patterns	23
Figure 4: Rare and Listed Plant Species in the Elk River Watershed.....	31
Figure 5: List of Nonnative Species found in the Elk River Watershed.....	32
Figure 6: History of Widespread Fires in the Elk River Watershed	34
Figure 7: Seral Stage Structure by Subwatershed.....	37
Figure 8: Timber Harvest by Half-Decade (graph)	37
Figure 9: Average Patch Size (Harvest-related) by Subwatershed	39
Figure 10: Total Timber Harvest by Subwatershed.....	39
Figure 11: Total Riparian Acres Harvested within Managed Stands	40
Figure 12: Elk River Management Land Allocations	44
Figure 13: Status of Elk River PETS and Rare Species	53
Figure 14: Elk River Northern Spotted Owl Activity Centers.....	57
Figure 15: Status of Northern Spotted Owls, Murrelets, and their Habitats within the Elk River Watershed	60
Figure 16: Breeding and Winter Bird Survey Data for Elk River, 1992-1997.....	68
Figure 17: Landslides above Anvil Creek.....	76
Figure 18: Frequency of Landslides/Mile of Road	78
Figure 19: Maximum Stream Temperature on the Mainstem at the Fish Hatchery	81
Figure 20: Status of Elk River Salmonid Stocks.....	87
Figure 21: Elk River Chinook Escapement 1984-1995	88
Figure 22: Mainstem Elk, Spawning ground surveys, Wild to Hatchery carcass ratios, 1988-1993	89
Figure 23: Segments identified as Water Quality Limited	90
Figure 24: Landslide Sediment Yield for Elk River Subwatersheds, 1952-1986	94

ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS
List of Figures (continued)

Figure 25: Large Wood Supply, percent harvested from High Watershed Sensitivity Area	94
Figure 26: Summary of Channel Condition by Subwatershed.....	95
Figure 27: Assessment of Resource Value for Subwatershed Habitat.....	96
Figure 28: Mean pool densities of salmonids per square meter in Elk River Subwatersheds, 1998-1994.....	97
Figure 29: North Fork Elk River Channel Response to Sediment.....	98
Figure 30: Maximum Stream Temperature at the mouth of Butler Creek	100
Figure 31: Panther Creek Channel Response to Sediment.....	101
Figure 32: Maximum Stream Temperature at the Mouth of Panther Creek	102
Figure 33: Bald Mountain Creek Channel Response to Sediment.....	103
Figure 34: Maximum Stream Temperature at the mouth of Bald Mtn Creek.....	104
Figure 35: Estimated Future Sediment	112
Figure 36: Desired Stand Replacement Interval.....	115
Figure 37: Desired Age Class Distribution by Plant Series.....	115
Figure 38: Desired Acres for Vegetative Treatment, Matrix Acres by Plant Series	116
Figure 39: Optimum Range of Female Salmonid Escapement for the Siskiyou National Forest Portion of the Elk River	119
Figure 40: Recommended Projects to Promote Watershed Values	127
Figure 41: Results of Watershed Analysis for Subwatersheds in Matrix.....	130
Figure 42: Recommended Monitoring Projects.....	131

ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS
List of Maps

Map 1:	Vicinity Map.....	4
Map 2:	Sothwest Oregon Province Map.....	5
Map 3:	Forest Service Management Areas Map.....	6
Map 4:	Elk River Watershed Map.....	7
Map 5:	Elk River Watershed Geology Map.....	8
Map 6:	Elk River Watershed Slope Map	9
Map 7:	Elk River Watershed Soil Depth and Parent Material Map	10
Map 8:	Elk River Watershed Soil Texture: Subsurface clay Content Map.....	11
Map 9:	Plant Series Map.....	27
Map 10:	Estimated 1890 Seral (Structural) Stages Map.....	28
Map 11:	Current Seral (Structural) Stages Map	29
Map 12:	Iron Mountain Botanical Area Map.....	30
Map 13:	Port Orford Cedar Occurrence And Diseased Areas Map.....	33
Map 14 :	Subwatersheds Map	36
Map 15:	Timber Harvest By Half-Decade Map	38
Map 16:	Managed Stands Within LSR (1955-1979) Map	41
Map 17:	Land Ownership Map.....	42
Map 18:	Fire Occurrence-National Forest Vicinity Map	46
Map 19:	Special Wildlife Sites, Meadows, And Wildlife Habitat Areas Map.....	50
Map 20:	Spotted Owl Survey Stations Map	56
Map 21:	Marbeled Murrelet Survey Stations Map	59
Map 22:	Critical Habitat For Nothern Spotted Owl And Marbled Murrelet Map	62
Map 23:	Breeding Bird Survey Routes Map.....	67
Map 24:	Watershed Sensitivity Map.....	75
Map 25:	Elk River Land Use History: Timber Harvest And Roads Map.....	77
Map 26:	Riparian Buffers On Private And Federal Lands Map.....	80

ELK RIVER WATERSHED ANALYSIS
List of Maps (continued)

Map 27:	Productive Flats For Fisheries Resource Map.....	85
Map 28:	Flood Damage Sites And timber Harvest Areas Map.....	92
Map 29 :	Estimated 2040 Seral (Structural) Stages Map.....	110

List of Appendices

Appendix A:	Elk River Management Land Allocations	141
Appendix B:	Elk River Seral Stage Classifications.....	143
Appendix C:	Exotic Plant Species Present in the Elk River Watershed.....	144
Appendix D:	Elk River Land Ownership.....	145
Appendix E:	Wildlife Species of the Elk River Watershed.....	146
Appendix F:	Peregrine Falcon Recovery Plan Objectives	153
Appendix G:	Pacific Bald Eagle Recovery Plan.....	155
Appendix H:	Bald Eagle Recovery Zone Boundaries for Oregon.....	158
Appendix I:	Habitat Enhancement Projects.....	159
Appendix J:	Data Used to Support Analysis.....	160
Appendix K:	Methods Used to Determine Optimum Female Escapement Goals	162
Appendix L:	Elk River Cultural Resource Summary.....	164
Appendix M:	Index of Relevant Information, Including Maps	167

The following acronyms are used throughout this document:

ACS	Aquatic Conservation Strategy
BBS	Breeding Bird Survey
BLM	Bureau of Land Management
CCC	Civilian Conservation Corps
CON	Connectivity / Diversity Blocks
DBH	Diameter at Breast Height (4.5 ft above ground)
DEIS	Draft Environmental Impact Statement
EA	Environmental Analysis
ESA	Endangered Species Act
FEIS	Final Environmental Impact Statement
FEMAT	Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team
FERM	Flood Emergency Road Management plan
GFMA	General Forest Management Areas
GIS	Geographical Information System
GTR	Green Tree Retention
HQI	Habitat Quality Index
ISC	Interagency Scientific Committee
LRMP	Land and Resource Management Plan
LSR	Late Successional Reserve
LSRA	Late Successional reserve Assessment
LWM	Large Woody Material
MFLW	Marten, Fisher, Lynx, Wolverine
NF	National Forest
NFP	Northwest Forest Plan
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOAA	National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration
NOI	Notice Of Intent
NRF	Nesting, Roosting, Foraging habitat for Northern Spotted Owl
NRHP	National Register of Historic Places
NTMB	Neo-Tropical Migrant Bird species
ODFW	Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife
OESA	Oregon Endangered Species Act
OSU	Oregon State University
PETS	Proposed, Endangered, Threatened, Sensitive species
PNW	USFS Pacific Northwest Research Station
RMO	Road Management Objective
ROD	Record Of Decision for the Northwest Forest Plan
SNF	Siskiyou National Forest
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USDI	United States Department of the Interior
USFS	United States Forest Service
USFWS	United States Fish & Wildlife Service
USGS	United States Geological Survey
WRT	Wildlife Reserve tree

INTRODUCTION

The Elk River Watershed Analysis summarizes key information for the Elk River beginning at the headwaters and ending at its mouth on the Pacific Ocean three miles north of the community of Port Orford. Among the important values of the Elk River drainage are its fish, wildlife, aesthetics, mining, timber and recreation. The watershed is representative of forested ecosystems along the southern Oregon coast, and includes habitat for old-growth associated species such as the northern spotted owl and the marbled murrelet. In this discussion, "Elk River" or "watershed" refers to the Elk River analysis area (Map 1).

The analysis followed the six steps of the Federal Guide for Watershed Analysis (Version 2.2) and considered the physical, biological and social conditions and trends relevant to the Elk River watershed. Information and ideas from several federal, state and local agencies as well as the public were included in the analysis. Information was collected about lands under the management of the Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management (BLM) and some private ownerships. Additional analysis documentation includes data files, maps, computer model runs, specialist reports, lists of data gaps, monitoring recommendations and process records. New information will be added as it is collected, as the watershed analysis is considered an ongoing process.

PURPOSE AND OBJECTIVES

Watershed analysis is essentially *ecosystem analysis at the watershed scale*. As one of the principal analyses for implementing the Aquatic Conservation Strategy (ACS) set forth in the Northwest Forest Plan (NFP) (*Record of Decision (ROD) for Amendments to Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management Planning Documents Within the Range of the Northern Spotted Owl* (USDA, USDI 1994)) it provides the watershed context for fishery protection, restoration, and enhancement efforts. The understanding gained through watershed analysis is critical to sustaining the health and productivity of natural resources. Healthy ecological functions are essential to maintain and create current and future social and economic opportunities.

The objectives of the analysis are to:

- identify principle issues,
- identify ecological processes and describe existing conditions within the watershed,
- apply technically rigorous procedures to interpret information,
- define activities that need to be modified to achieve the desired condition and,
- outline monitoring and restoration opportunities.

MANAGEMENT CONTEXT

The Elk River is in Curry County, Oregon, between the Rogue and Coquille River watersheds. The Sixes River lies immediately north, and several small coastal streams immediately to the south.

The NFP (1994) identified 12 province planning and analysis areas within the range of the northern spotted owl. The use of planning and analysis provinces allows differentiation between areas of common biological and physical processes at a larger scale than individual watersheds. The provinces, although not optimum for all management objectives, help stratify different scales of analysis.

Southwest Oregon Province

The Southwest Oregon Province contains approximately 12,678 square miles and is located in Southwest Oregon (Map 2). The province is divided into four distinct sub-basins which include the Umpqua River, Coquille/Coos Rivers, Rogue River and the South Coast Basins.

The Southwest Oregon Province as defined by the NFP overlays distinctly different geologic provinces that have considerable implications for the diversity and migration of flora and fauna. This province includes the physiographic-based Cascade Province, the west Cascade sub-province and the Klamath Mountains Province. The Klamath Mountains Province is linked to the Cascades and the Sierra Nevada of California to the south and the Oregon Coast Range to the west and north.

South Coast Basin

The South Coast Basins contain 1,093 square miles (699,634 acres). It contains all coastal rivers within the Southwest Oregon Province except the Rogue, Umpqua and Coquille/Coos watersheds (Map 2). The South Coast Basins can further be divided into distinct sub-basins (watersheds). These sub-basins include numerous small coastal streams and larger coastal rivers such as the Winchuck, Chetco, Pistol, Elk and Sixes.

The various South Coast sub-basins generally have headwaters in the Siskiyou Mountains of the Klamath Mountains Province. The topography is characterized by a relatively narrow coastal plain and narrow alluvial valleys extending into the mountainous interior.

The South Coast streams have been altered by Europeans starting in the mid nineteenth century. The narrow coastal plain, vegetated by mature Sitka spruce and Douglas-fir forest, were settled and cleared where agriculture is possible. Agricultural draining and clearing has simplified the stream and riparian habitat in, and along, coastal streams.

The result of these activities has been a general lowering of the water table in the coastal and interior valleys and the confinement of the streams to a single channel. The interior hillslopes have been roaded for timber harvest. Parts of these headwater areas include unstable and potentially unstable sites, and the sediment transport characteristics of the streams have been altered. These activities have changed the lower stream sections and estuary habitat so important to juvenile salmonids migrating to the ocean.

Elk River

The Siskiyou National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan , as amended by the NFP has created management allocations on federal lands that define the type of management activities within the watershed. Current National Forest land designations (Map 3) within the watershed are 4,800 acres of Matrix, 22,127 acres of Late-Successional Reserve, and 1,313 acres in Botanical. An additional 15,382 acres are in other designations such as Wilderness, Wild/Scenic/Recreational river, Supplemental Resources, and special wildlife sites. Activities in these allocations may not proceed prior to determining how proposed land management activities meet the Aquatic Conservation Strategy objectives (NFP B-11).

There are 764 acres of Federal land managed by the BLM in the Elk Watershed. These are designated Matrix lands with two sub-allocations; 364 acres of General Forest Management Areas (GFMA) and 400 acres of Connectivity/Diversity Blocks (CON). The objectives are to provide a sustainable timber supply, provide connectivity between Late-Successional Reserve (LSR), provide early successional habitat, and provide important ecological functions.

CHARACTERIZATION

Physical Setting

Location: The Elk River flows in westward direction to its mouth just south of Cape Blanco on the Pacific Ocean. The watershed encompasses 58,388 acres; of these, 45,206 acres are in the Siskiyou National Forest. Fed by six major tributaries and numerous small streams, the Elk River enters the Pacific Ocean about three miles north of the town of Port Orford (Maps 1 and 4).

Climate: The climate is typical of coastal Oregon with a strong marine influence, high winter precipitation and moderate year-round temperatures. Annual average precipitation reported from the National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), Port Orford 5E, located at the Oregon State Fish Hatchery is 120 inches. The period of record is from 1970 to the present with maximum annual precipitation of 172.4 inches occurring in 1996 and the minimum of 74.0 inches occurring in 1976. Approximately 80 percent of the precipitation occurs from October to March, and four percent during June, July and August. Snowfall is generally light and of short duration because of the low elevation and moderate marine influence. Less than five percent of the watershed lies between 2400 and 4000 feet in elevation, within the transient snow zone.

Landforms and Geology: The Elk River watershed, located at the northern part of the Klamath Mountains/Siskiyou Province and the southern part of the Oregon Coast Range Province, is comprised primarily of Rocky Point sandstones and siltstones, Humbug Mountain conglomerate, shales of the Galice Formation, diorite intrusions and ultramafic rocks (Map 5). The river leaves the Siskiyou National Forest through a broad valley, and enters the ocean through a small estuary. Recent and ongoing uplift (Muhs et al. 1990) has created rugged, steep terrain with inner gorges adjacent to streams.

Where streams downcut along slopes underlain by resistant rock types including sandstones/conglomerates and diorite, the inner gorges are steepest (Map 6). The steepest slopes are bluffs underlain by conglomerate bedrock, with large boulders scattered below. Slopes are more gentle, and soils tend to be deeper (Map 7) in faulted areas along contacts and on Galice metasediments (Map 5). Soils developed on stable weathering surfaces long enough to develop a high clay content are limited in extent (Map 8).

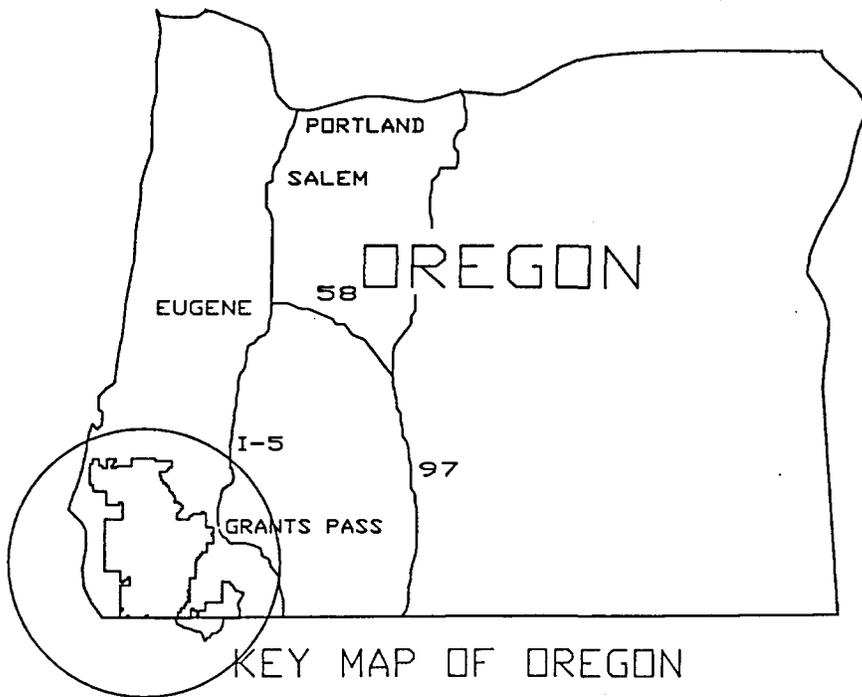
Terrestrial: The watershed has a majority of hardwood/conifer mixture including Douglas fir, western hemlock, Port-Orford-cedar, Jeffrey pine, Sitka spruce, tanoak, red alder, madrone, myrtle, and bigleaf maple. Under the tree canopy are huckleberry, salal, rhododendron, vine maple, willow, swordfern, poison oak and others. The major plant communities vary in age from early seral to old growth, and form habitat for a variety of animal species.

Wildlife: The watershed has varied wildlife species, including northern spotted owls, marbled murrelets, osprey, Roosevelt elk, Bald Eagle, black-tailed deer, mountain lions, northwestern pond turtle, and red-legged frogs. The Del Norte salamander has also been found at one location, and unconfirmed goshawk reports exist in the lower river. Ponds and meadows, hardwood stands, and talus slopes provide critical habitat for many wildlife species.

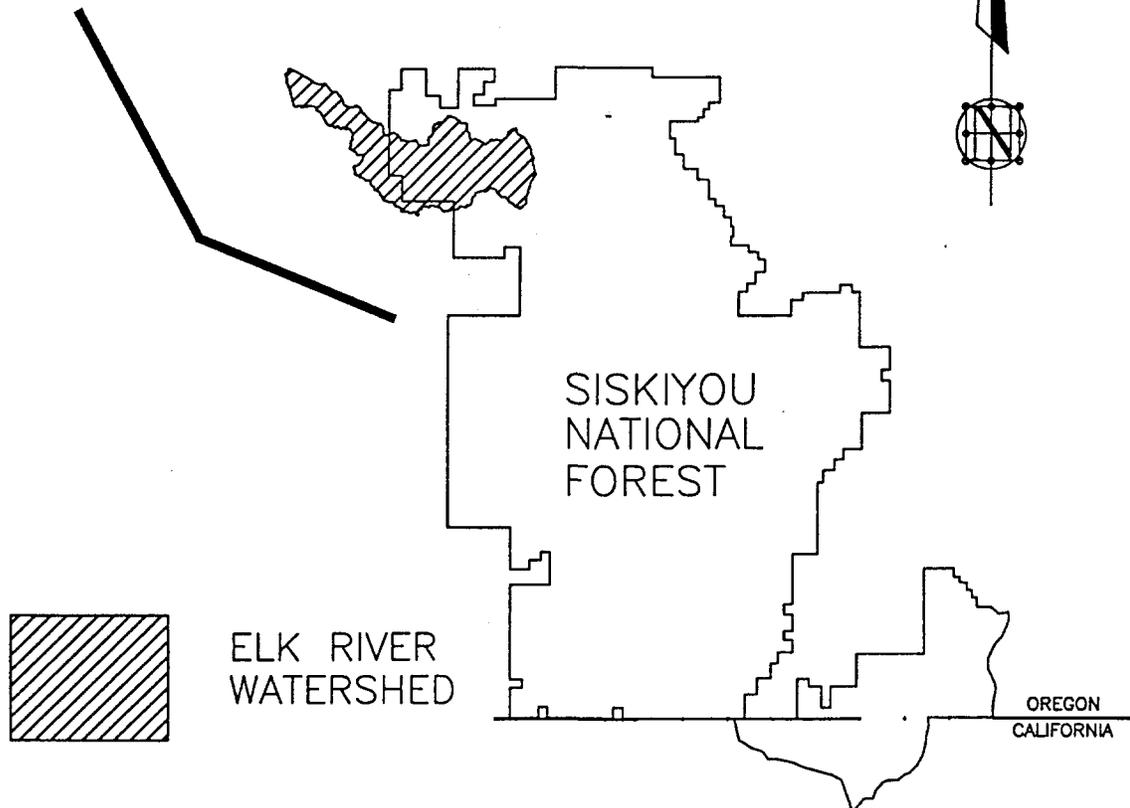
Fish: Elk River is recognized for its role in maintaining the viability of native salmonid stocks. Fish are identified as an Outstandingly Remarkable Value for the Wild and Scenic River due to wild fish stocks, diversity of fish species, and high quality habitat. The Elk River watershed produces anadromous steelhead trout, coho salmon, chinook salmon, chum salmon and cutthroat trout. Resident rainbow and cutthroat trout populations are also present. For a watershed of its size, Elk River is one of the highest producers of chinook salmon in the Pacific Northwest (Susac 1997, personal communication).

People: Throughout prehistoric and historic periods, people living in the lower Elk River have depended on the area's natural resources. Two primary sources of local income - fishing and logging - have decreased in recent years. Most people come to live in or visit the area because of its physical beauty and social amenities including the area's natural resources and relaxed lifestyle.

VICINITY MAP



KEY MAP OF OREGON



Map 01

ALL DRAWINGS - NO SCALE

OREGON

Map 02

UMPQUA RIVER

COOS BAY

ROSEBURG

COQUILLE/COOS

SOUTH COAST

POWERS

PORT ORFORD

ROGUE RIVER

GRANTS PASS

MEDFORD

GOLD BEACH

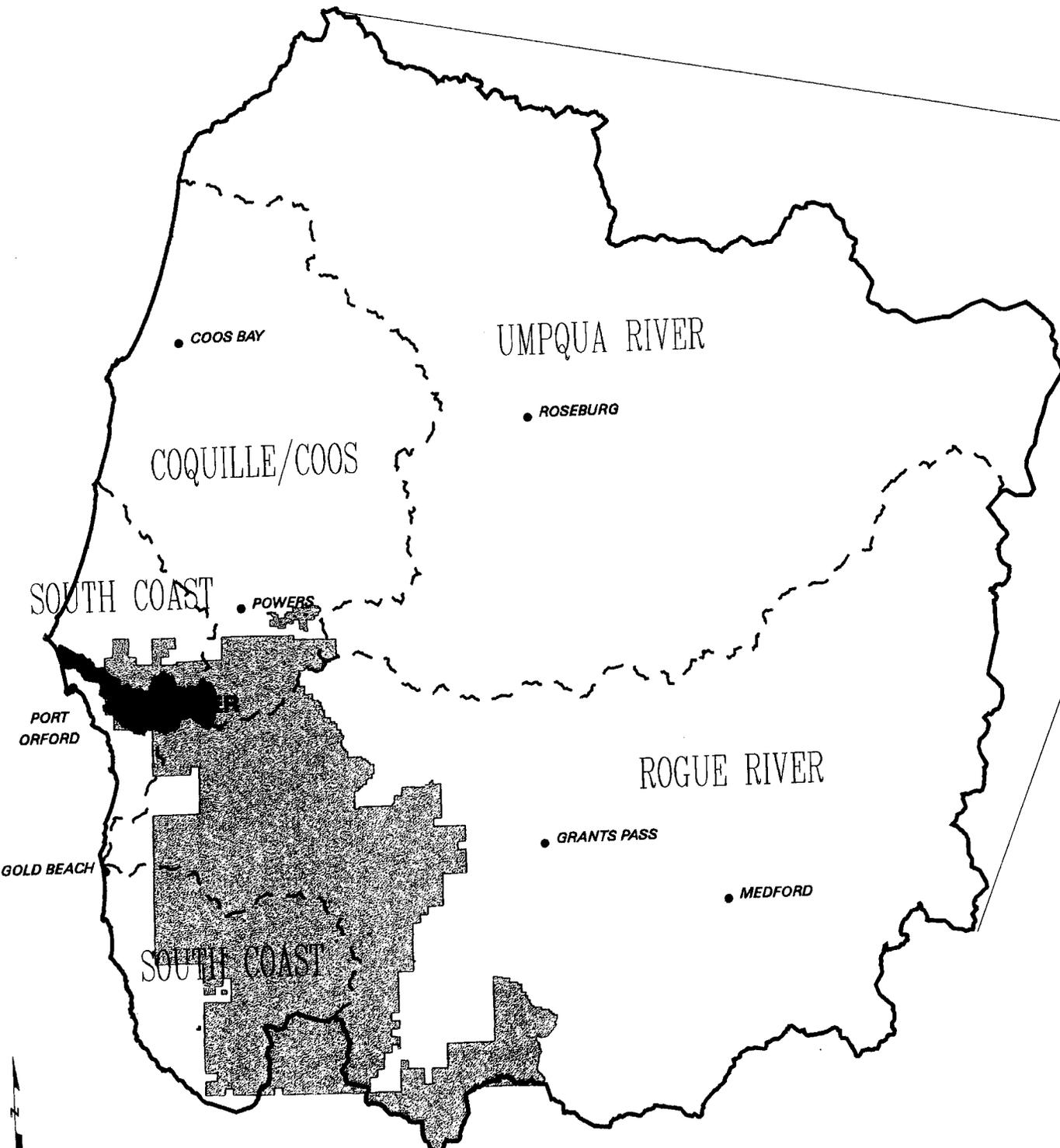
SOUTH COAST

Elk River Watershed Analysis Area

Siskiyou National Forest

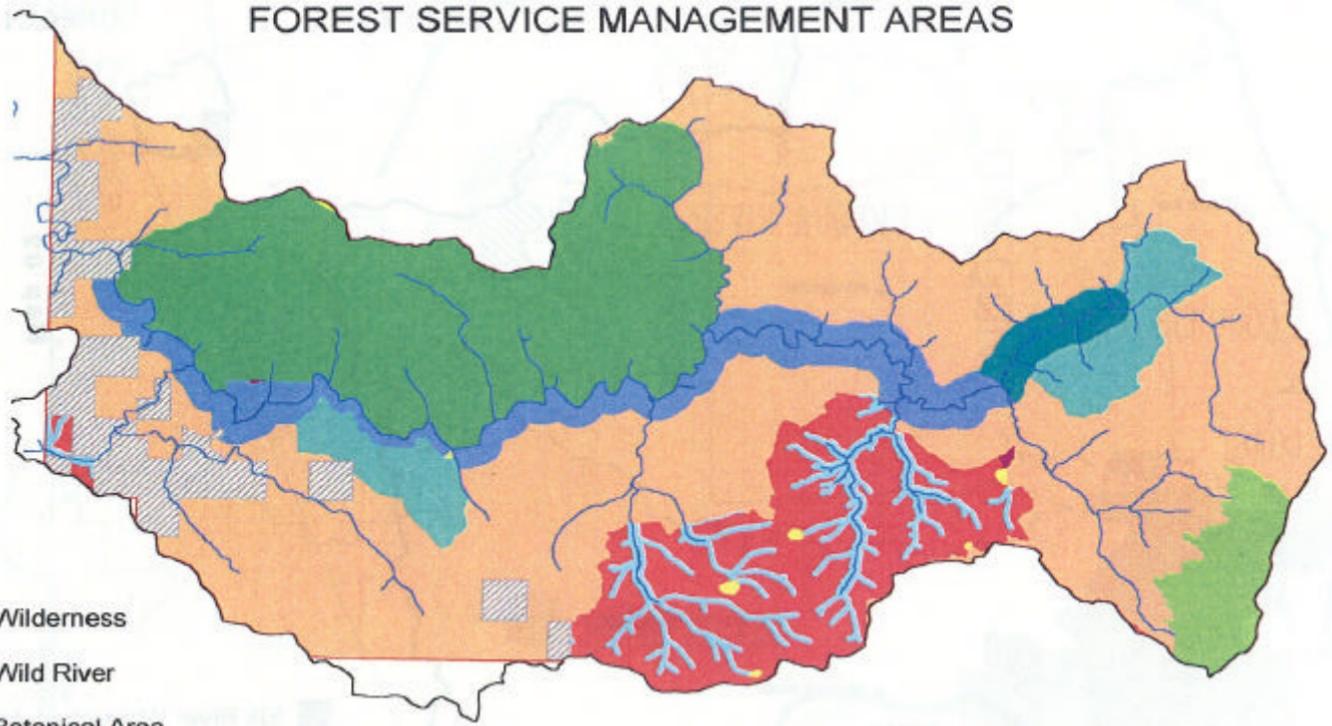
River Basins

Southwest Oregon Province



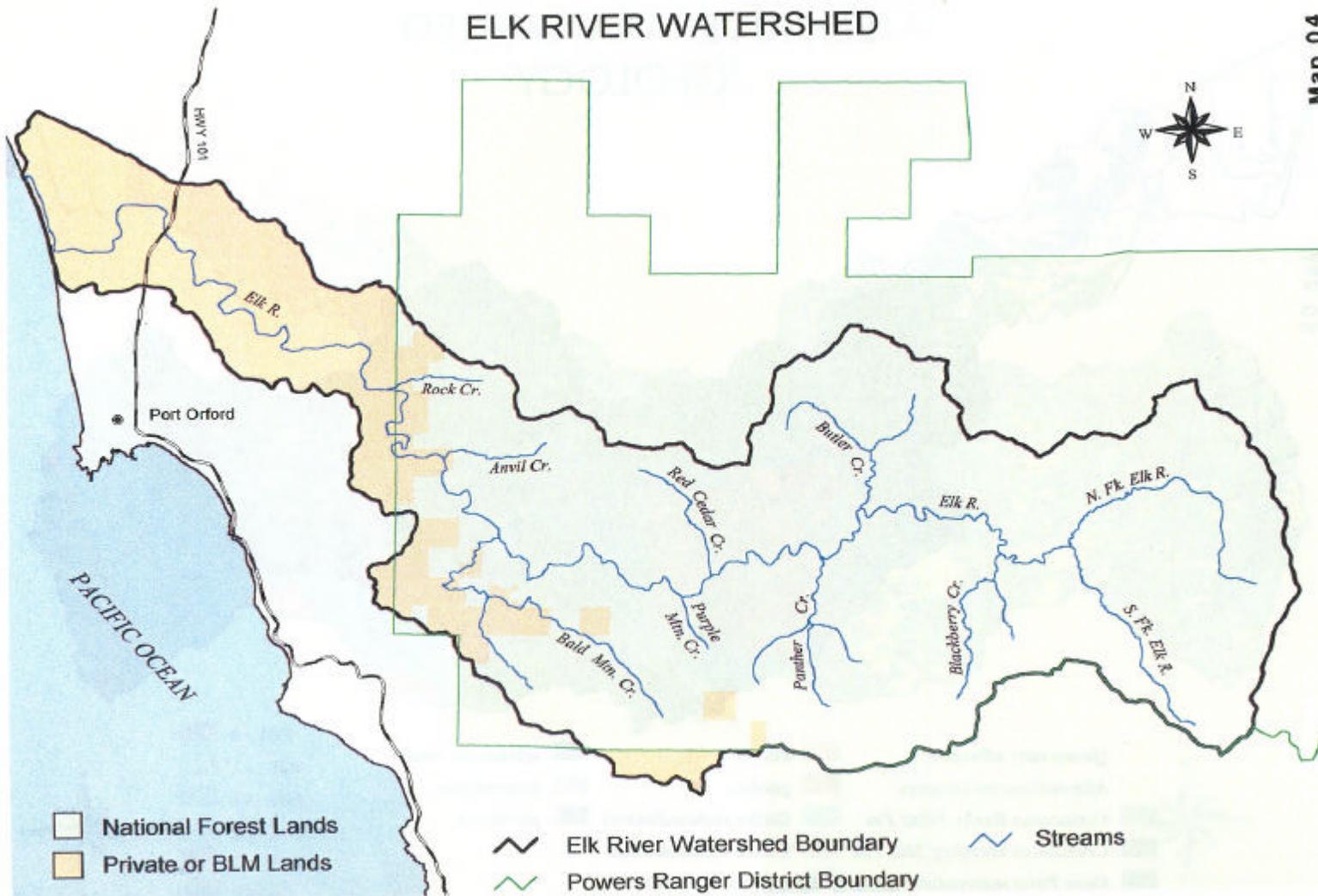
FOREST SERVICE MANAGEMENT AREAS

- Wilderness
- Wild River
- Botanical Area
- Backcountry Recreation
- Supplemental Resource
- Late Successional Reserves
- Special Wildlife Sites
- Scenic/Recreational River
- Riparian Reserves
- Retention Visual / Matrix
- Matrix
- Private Lands
- National Forest Boundary
- Streams



ELK RIVER WATERSHED

Map 04



ELK RIVER WATERSHED GEOLOGY

Map 05

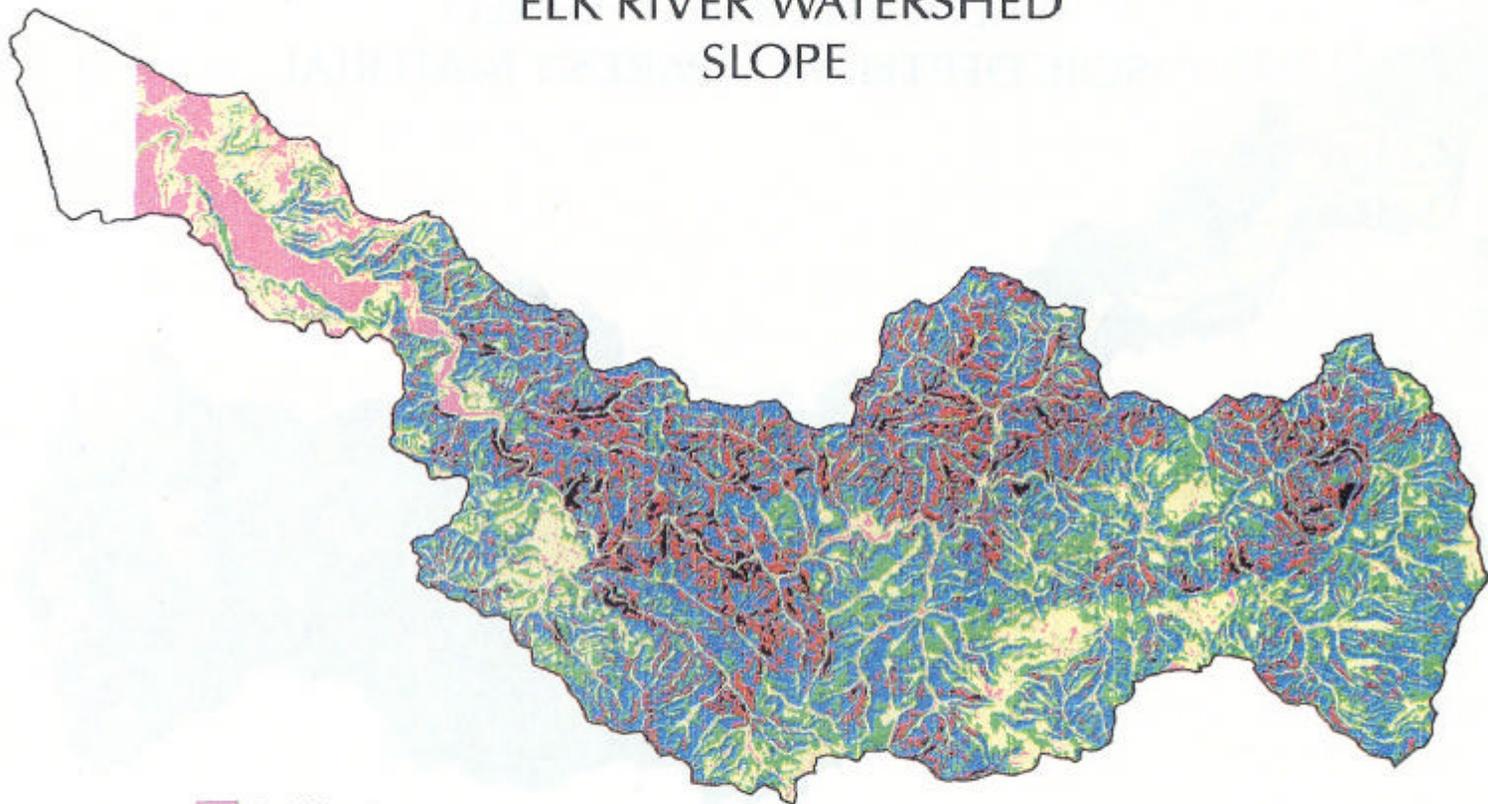
- | | | |
|--|---|---|
|  <i>Quaternary alluvium</i> |  <i>diorite</i> |  <i>ultramafic rocks</i> |
|  <i>Alluvial/marine terraces</i> |  <i>gabbro</i> |  <i>serpentinite</i> |
|  <i>Cretaceous Rocky Point Fm</i> |  <i>Gallie metasediments</i> |  <i>peridotite</i> |
|  <i>Cretaceous Humbug Mtn Fm</i> |  <i>Gallie metavolcanics</i> | |
|  <i>Otter Point metasediments</i> |  <i>Colebrooke schist</i> | |



JUNE 13, 1992

ELK RIVER WATERSHED SLOPE

Map 06



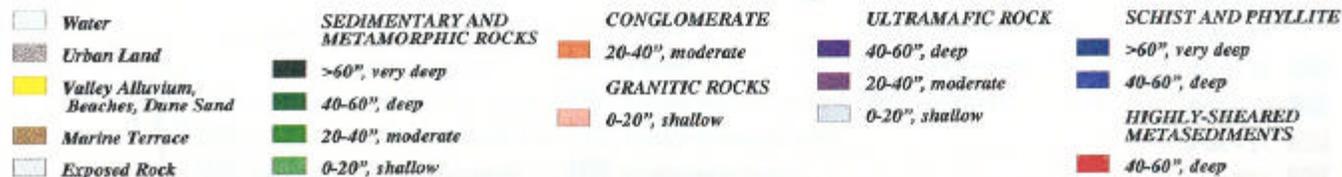
-  0 - 10%
-  11 - 30%
-  31 - 50%
-  51 - 70%
-  71 - 90%
-  91%+



JUNE 11, 1997

ELK RIVER WATERSHED SOIL DEPTH AND PARENT MATERIAL

Map 07



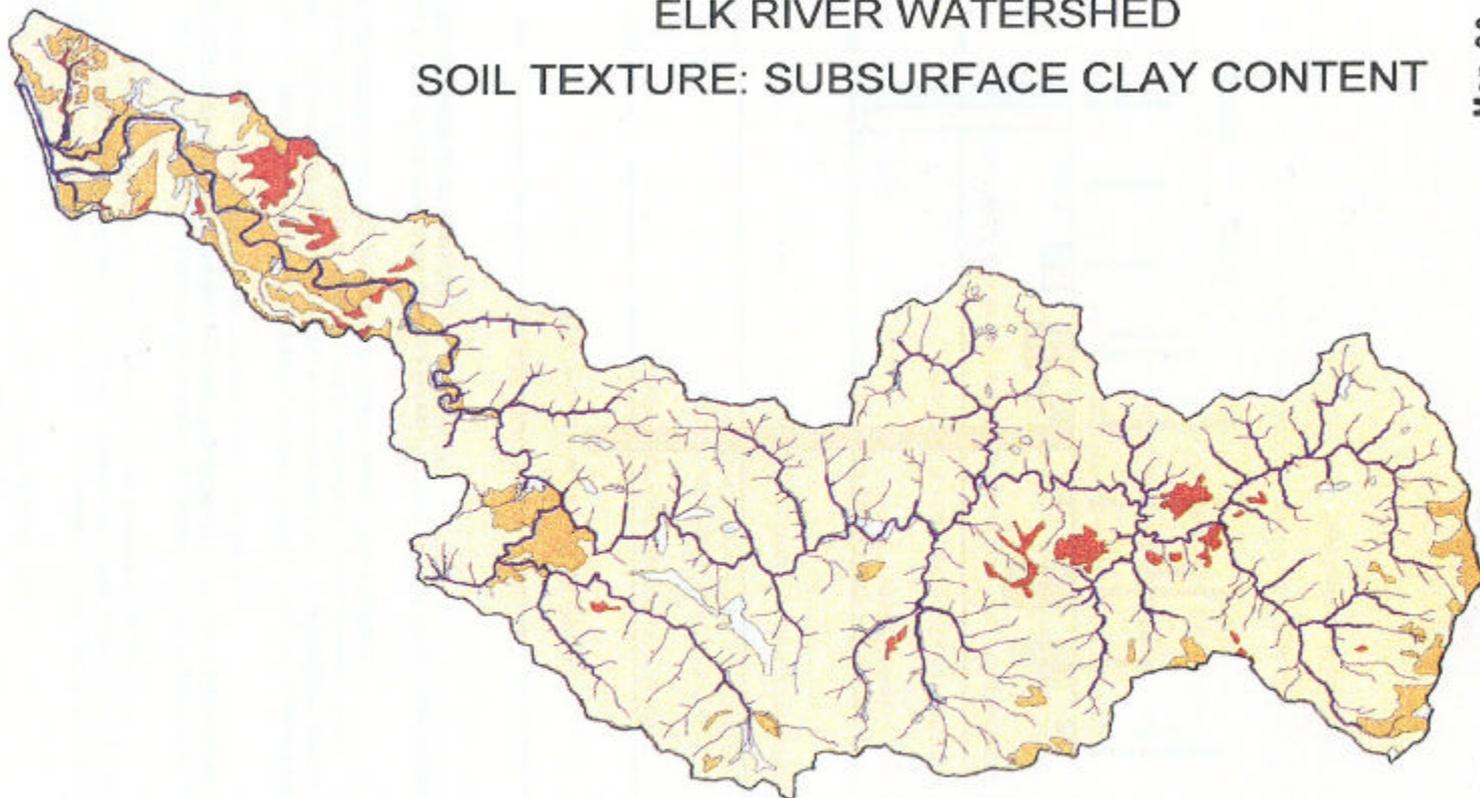
SEPT 9, 1997

ELK RIVER WATERSHED

SOIL TEXTURE: SUBSURFACE CLAY CONTENT

Map 08

Elk River - 11



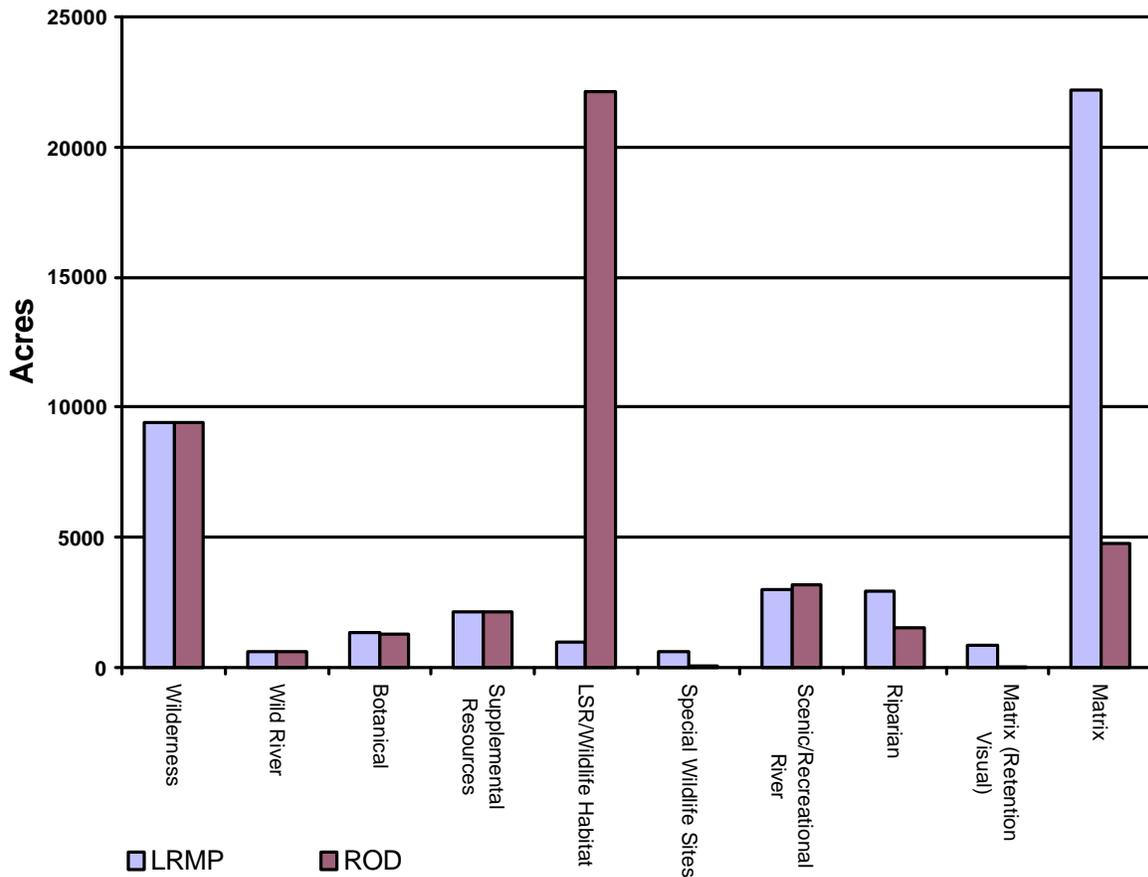
CHAPTER 1 ELK RIVER WATERSHED VALUES

The Elk River drainage is valued for its fish, wildlife, clean water, scenery, timber, and recreation. The watershed is representative of other old-growth ecosystems along the Southern Oregon coast, and includes habitat for old-growth associated species such as the northern spotted owl.

Because Elk River flows directly into the Pacific Ocean it provides habitat for anadromous fish and sea-going animals such as the marbled murrelet. The Elk River fish hatchery supplements native fish populations and is important as a source of anadromous fish for the region.

The Siskiyou Forest Plan (1989), as amended by the NFP (1994) provides management direction for Forest Service managed lands within the Elk River watershed (Figure 1 displays these land allocations). The values for which Elk River is managed include: wilderness, botanical values, scenery, river- and watershed-related values, and general forest uses including timber production.

Figure 1: Land allocations in the Siskiyou Forest Plan and the NFP (ROD). See Appendix A, Elk River Management Land Allocations.



In 1992, the Forest Service solicited and received written public comment on the Draft Environmental Impact Statement for the Elk River Wild and Scenic Management Plan (DEIS). Although people directed comments to the management alternatives described in the DEIS, their comments generally reflected the wide spectrum of public uses and values of the Elk River watershed. Most comments expressed values which are easily quantified, but many described feelings and values which are qualitative and/or difficult to verbalize, such as "security values" (FEMAT 1993). These qualitative comments deal with emotion, experience, and feelings such as the value of a scene or place felt by a painter (Schroeder 1993), the magnetic pull a person feels to be near nature, or the experience of living in the mountains or near the ocean. The collection of comments found in this chapter represents the common themes and sentiments expressed about the Elk River.

"I am a native Oregonian who believes that timber can be harvested as a crop and that a sustained yield can be maintained without harm to the Elk River."

"I live in Bandon and the people around here want local involvement, and would like to see finished products come from this wood..."

"We care about families, jobs and access to natural resources. We also care about clean water that salmon and trout can spawn in..."

"...I personally love the natural unspoiled beauty of the Elk River."

"Our family enjoys the beauty of the Elk River wilderness and I would like to share 'the Elk' with my grandchildren."

"My sons and I enjoy our annual visits to Oregon for steelhead and salmon fishing..."

"You need to recognize that Elk River is extremely important on a region-wide basis, because so many of our other salmon rivers have been severely damaged."

"I can't help but feel that Elk River is a small jewel in the forest crown worthy of your most diligent stewardship."

"I feel the only way to manage this fragile ecosystem is keep the old-growth forest ecosystem intact. We must save our old-growth Forests..."

"I feel the prime objectives should be protection of fish habitat..."

"I have been a fisherman's wife and I want to protect the rivers so we will always have salmon."

"It should be respected for its recreational, wildlife, and fishery values."

"I like roads for fire control access as well as mineral exploration and mining, and for logging."

"I would like to see maximum protection of an area I enjoy experiencing so much."

"With so many of the coastal towns dependent upon tourism and salmon fishing, we need to make every effort to keep our rivers clean."

"The Siskiyou N.F. needs to work more closely with local conservationists..."

"We want to see forestry practices improved."

The comments provide a synopsis of human values and uses of the watershed. A classification system for social values for forest resources includes: commodity values, amenity values, environmental quality values, ecological values, public use values and spiritual values (Stankey and Clark 1992). Using this classification, all of the social value categories were addressed except for spiritual values. Although these values were inherent in many of the comments, they were difficult to isolate without additional work more appropriate to specific, project-related planning.

These public values and uses help shape the goals for resource management and help identify "Key Questions" which determine the emphasis areas and depth of the watershed analysis. The document is organized by the categories of values specific to the Elk River watershed:

Commodity Values

- local employment relating to timber harvest
- local employment relating to farming
- fishing
- special use products

Amenity Values

- scenery

Public Use Values

- access and travel
- recreation
- landownership and management policy

Environmental Quality Values

- water quality

Ecological Values

- protection of forest and biodiversity
- protection of wildlife habitats
- protection of fish habitat
- protection of unique and special habitats

CHAPTER 2 KEY QUESTIONS

Key questions focus the analysis on particular types and locations of cause-and-effect relationships, and discern conditions as they relate to values and uses of the watershed. The questions have been grouped into five categories: commodity aspects, amenity aspects, public use within the watershed, and environmental quality and ecology with its two components, terrestrial and aquatic. The page numbers referenced under each key question serve as a "quick index" to specific subjects within this analysis.

A. COMMODITY ASPECTS OF ELK RIVER

Page

What type of local employment have the Elk River and its watershed contributed in the past?

*

Can the Elk River watershed contribute to local employment opportunities in the future?

*

B. AMENITY ASPECTS OF ELK RIVER

What is the present scenic condition of the watershed and how will it change?

*

C. PUBLIC USE ASPECTS OF ELK RIVER

What is the present recreational use of the watershed?

*

What are the anticipated trends for recreation in the watershed?

*

How has the watershed been accessed in the past and today?

*

What are the anticipated access trends for the watershed?

*

*Who owns and manages the land in the watershed and what policies govern its use? **

D. ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: TERRESTRIAL COMPONENTS

Vegetation

What type of vegetation grows in the watershed?

*

What important plant habitats exist in the watershed?

*

What plant species are present?

*

What sensitive and rare plant species are present?

*

What exotic plant species are present, and what is their influence on native vegetation?

*

*How is Port-Orford-cedar and it's associated root disease distributed across the watershed? **

What historic disturbance phenomena have occurred across the landscape?

*

What are the influences of human activities? *

How have past disturbances affected vegetative patch sizes? *

How has large woody material accumulated in the watershed? *

Wildlife

What are the processes and events that guide wildlife species presence and distribution? *

What wildlife species are present? *

What Proposed, Endangered, Threatened, Sensitive or Rare species are present, and what is their status? *

What Management Indicator Species (MIS) and other species of interest are present, and what is their status? *

What Survey and Managed Species are present, and what is their status?

What exotic species are present, and what is their influence on native species? *

What are the influences of human activities on wildlife populations? *

How can wildlife harassment be decreased? *

What are the predicted future trends for wildlife populations in the watershed? *

What important wildlife habitats are present? *

How are these habitats arranged across the landscape? *

What habitat enhancement projects have been done in the past? *

How can wildlife habitats be restored? *

E. ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: AQUATIC COMPONENTS

Landslides and Surface Erosion

What are the processes which deliver sediment, and where do they occur? *

How much sediment has been delivered by natural processes and by human-caused activities and where? *

How can human-caused sediment be reduced? *

Water Clarity

What current human uses affect water clarity? *

Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem

What are the processes which deliver large wood and where do they occur? *

Where have management activities reduced the large wood supply below natural levels? *

Where are the areas of concern for future wood supply? *

How can the supply of large wood be restored? *

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Temperature

What processes reduce shade and increase stream water temperature and where do they occur? *

Where have management activities increased solar exposure and stream water temperature over natural levels? *

What are the future trends in stream temperature? *

What are the existing temperatures and are they changed from historic ranges? *

How can stream temperature be improved? *

Stream Flow

What management-related processes have the potential to change the natural magnitude and frequency of stream flow? *

Stream Channel Morphology

Where are channels sensitive to increased sediment and decreased large wood? *

Is there evidence that channel morphology and sediment storage have changed from historic conditions? *

What are the expected channel morphology and storage condition trends? *

How can the channel conditions be improved? *

Stream Water Temperature Effects on Fish Habitat

Where are fish habitats sensitive to increased stream water temperatures? *

Productive Flats

What are productive flats and where do they occur within the watershed? *

Fish Habitat, Distribution, and Populations

What fish species inhabit the watershed? Are these different from the historic species? *

*What are the current fish habitat conditions, basinwide and in susceptible reaches? **

*Is there evidence that fish habitat conditions have changed from historic? **

*What are the expected trends in fish habitat conditions? **

*How can the fish habitat be improved? **

CHAPTER 3 PAST AND CURRENT CONDITIONS, PROCESSES

In this chapter, the Elk River watershed is presented in the context of the values and key questions identified in Chapters 1 and 2.

COMMODITY VALUES

Throughout prehistory and history, the economy of the southern coast of Oregon has focused on the area's natural resources.

Subsistence

In pre-European time, the Quatomah band of the Tututni group of Athapascan-speaking Indians occupied the Elk River drainage. They spent winters in permanent villages located near the mouth and along the lower section of the river. During the rest of the year they traveled to the uplands to fish, hunt, and gather, relying on the rich salmon supply as a major food source. They also relied on acorns, camas, berries, and deer.

Beginning in the 1820s, fur trappers and traders were the first non-Indians to harvest the coast's rich resources. Jedediah Smith's party crossed the Elk River in 1828.

The first settlement on the southern Oregon coast was Port Orford. Between the 1850s and the 1930s the dominant economic pattern along the Elk, , was subsistence living. The early settlers along the lower section of the river cleared the forest for ranches. Residents lived by hunting, fishing, raising livestock, and growing food. Bartering was common. Small scale mining occasionally provided cash to supplement this subsistence lifestyle.

Special Forest Products

One remnant of the subsistence living culture is the collection of special forest products. The National Forest is utilized for the collection of ferns, boughs, Christmas trees, mushrooms, firewood, and other items, this does provide some employment opportunities. Collection of these products is done under permit. The District office in Powers sells permits which are valid across the entire District. So it is difficult to track in which specific watershed the collection is taking place. The current value of the permits is approximately 10% of the market value of the products. The market values of individual products changes from year to year, so the interest in collecting varies from year to year.

When market values of some products such as beargrass are high, there can be considerable public interest in collecting this product. The District may receive many phone calls and personal contacts about these commodities. Compared to timber harvest or lumber processing the collection of special forest products makes a very small contribution to local employment.

Mining

In 1853, when gold was discovered at the mouth of the Elk River, the area experienced a short-lived mining boom. After the turn of the century, mining operations in neighboring drainages, such as the Sixes and Rogue Rivers, provided employment for Elk River residents. Subsequent mining on the Elk itself was small scale. After World War II, the lower price of gold made mining even less profitable.

The recreational portion of the Wild and Scenic River has been withdrawn from mineral entry. Mining will be allowed on those claims that predate the withdrawal and where valid existing rights are determined through mineral examination. Operations will be subject to mitigation measures that protect the river's outstandingly remarkable values. Today, there is one mining claim with a completed validity exam and

Notice of Intent (NOI) on the Recreational portion of the river (Stinson 1997). This activity under the NOI is considered recreational rather than commercial because of its limited scale.

Other recreational scale mining, such as gold panning, is prohibited because mineral entry has been withdrawn. Rockhounding is allowed on National Forest land provided such activities are compatible with the Forest's standards and guides.

Mining activity for locatable minerals, such as gold, on private lands is not known, but presumed to be at a very low level. There is low potential for leasable minerals like coal, gas, and oil. The saleable minerals, rock, sand, and gravel have high potential within the watershed and are mined. In all of Curry County mining provides only .01% of the total county wide employment (McGinnis 1996).

Fishing

Commercial fishing began on the southern Oregon coast in the late 1800s with the construction of canneries and hatcheries. Residents near the mouth of Elk River found employment in these endeavors. Records from 1927 (Figure 2) indicate a commercial gillnet fishery operating near the mouth of the Elk River harvested significant numbers of coho, chinook, chum and steelhead (Bender 1970). In the mid-1900s a fleet of 60-70 fishing vessels operated out of Port Orford.

Figure 2: 1927 Commercial Gillnet Fishery Catch Records for the Elk River

Species	Total Pounds	Avg Wt./Fish	Estimated Catch
Coho Salmon	13,336 lbs.	10 lbs.	1,334 Fish
Chinook Salmon	14,889 lbs.	20 lbs.	744 Fish
Chum Salmon	2,238 lbs.	12 lbs.	187 Fish
Steelhead	5,952 lbs.	10 lbs.	595 Fish

In the 1980s Port Orford ranked second among Oregon coastal ports in total chinook catch value (Columbia River fishery excluded; Lukas and Carter 1985). An extension of the commercial fishing season until November 30 increased the contribution of Elk River chinook to fishermen and fish processors located in Port Orford. Because the November season is confined to the area near the mouth of the Elk River, it provides a good indication of Elk River quantities. In 1984 the November Port Orford chinook catch was 28,000 lbs, which was 30% of the year's catch at Port Orford, and 87% of the November chinook catch off the entire Oregon coast (Lukas and Carter 1984). By 1993, the November Port Orford chinook catch had dropped to 9,200 lbs (ODFW, Newport, Oregon). Commercial salmon catch has dropped significantly for Coos and Curry County ports from 2.8 million pounds in 1989 to 0.1 million pounds in 1994. Groundfish harvest (flounder, perch, rockfish, sole, and Pacific whiting) in the 1989 to 1994 period exceeded 20 million pounds each year (Anderson 1996). This shows the importance of the groundfish harvest relative to the salmon harvest for Oregon's south coast ports.

The fall chinook run on the Elk also attracted sport fishing. Local residents recall the mid-1900s when they backed their pickup truck down to the river, caught salmon with nets, and flipped them into the back end until the bed was full. Since the mid-1980's, hundreds of sport anglers travel to the Elk each fall to fish for chinook and steelhead. Peak days of 50 drift boats and 300 bank anglers fishing some 13 miles of river are not uncommon. During 1993, thirty fishing guides from southern Oregon and northern California operated on the river.

Timber Production

Commercial logging in the Elk River watershed began in the mid-1800s. In 1851, the first shipment of cedar shingles left Port Orford for California. Until the 1930s, however, logging along the Elk River was small scale. The ranches on the lower part of the river produced lumber for their own use. During this time loggers split Port-Orford-cedar logs and floated them to a mill at the Marsh Ranch, where they were made into battery separators.

In 1936, Transpacific Lumber built a dock in Port Orford, and a logging railroad was built from the Elk River valley across the ridge to the dock. This marked the beginning of shipping Elk River lumber to larger markets in California.

National Forest lands were accesses for timber harvest beginning in the 1950's, coinciding with a progressively expanding road system. The timber industry became economically important, with over 300 million board feet of timber harvested from National Forest land between 1954 and 1989. Several mills were supplied predominantly by timber from the Elk River watershed. Western States Plywood, located on the Elk River, employed 230 people. It closed in 1974 because it could no longer compete with larger mills. In the past decade both the Moore Mill lumber production facility and the Rogge Mill, both located in Bandon, have closed.

The natural resource contribution of the Elk River to the local population is similar to Curry County overall, therefore readily available information about land ownership and employment in Curry County is applicable to the Elk River watershed. A high percentage of the watershed and the county is Federal ownership. The Elk River is 79% Federal and Curry County is 54% Federal. Historically, timber harvest came from both Federal and private lands within the county, and in the last decade Federal harvest has declined rapidly (McGinnis et al. 1996). Along with the drop in Federal harvest came increased lumber production efficiency as mills modernized equipment. These two factors have combined to reduce timber and lumber related employment (Anderson 1996).

Curry County has 181,000 acres of commercial timberlands (McGinnis et al. 1996), much of this is held by large commercial timber companies managing over 10,000 acres. By contrast private ownership in the Elk River is smaller at about 1000 acres or less.

Agriculture

Less than 10% of Curry County is in farmland, this includes berry production and nursery products, livestock pasture, and small woodlots. The value of farm products sold has increased dramatically in the county from \$5.4 million in 1982 to \$11.0 million in 1992 (McGinnis et al. 1996). The development of many new cranberry bogs has contributed to this trend, which reasonably represents the farmland in the Elk River watershed.

Current Condition

A succession of land designations has gradually reduced the amount of timber available for harvest on National Forest lands.

- 1984 - Congress designated the 9,394 acre Grassy Knob Wilderness, 9,394; roughly 20% of the wilderness acres reside within the Elk River watershed.
- 1988 - Congress designated a 19-mile segment of the Elk River as part of the National Wild and Scenic Rivers System.
- 1989 - The Siskiyou National Forest completed its Land and Resource Management Plan. This plan provides direction for management of the Forest's resources and allocated thousands of acres to designations such as Botanical, Supplemental Resource, Special Wildlife Habitat, Riparian, etc.
- 1990 - U.S. Department of Fish and Wildlife listed the northern spotted owl as Threatened, and established 3,000 acres of critical habitat within the Elk River watershed.
- 1992 - U.S. Department of Fish and Wildlife listed the marbled murrelet as Threatened.
- 1994 - The NFP was signed and it allocated 46% of the watershed to Late-Successional Reserves, while designating Elk River as a Key Watershed. The NFP also allocated 3,304 acres in the Matrix land allocation with an objective for timber harvest. Of these 3,304 acres, a reduction of approximately 46% could be expected for identification of all classes of Riparian Reserves.

The economy still depends on the area's natural resources, though no longer relying heavily on those in the Elk River. Employment in logging and commercial fishing have declined from past highs, while recreation

and tourism has increased. At about the same time retired persons have moved to the area because of its amenity such as mild climate, sparse population, and natural setting. Restaurant, motel, and construction jobs remain steady, and there is a growing arts community.

AMENITY VALUES

Scenery

Congress enacted the National Wild and Scenic Rivers Act in 1968. In 1988, the Omnibus Oregon Wild and Scenic Rivers Act added parts of forty rivers to the National Wild and Scenic River System. Part of the Elk River was designated Wild and Scenic under this legislation. Anadromous fishery, water quality and scenic quality are the Outstandingly Remarkable Values of the Elk River.

Under the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act, a river may be classified as Wild, Scenic, or Recreational. The Elk River has two classifications:

- The 2 mile segment of the North Fork Elk from the falls to its confluence with the South Fork is classified as a Wild river. Wild rivers are rivers that are free of impoundments and generally inaccessible except by trail, with watersheds or shorelines essentially primitive and water unpolluted. These represent vestiges of primitive America
- The 17 mile segment from the confluence of the North and South Forks of the Elk to Anvil Creek is classified as a Recreational river. Recreational rivers are those rivers that are readily accessible by road and that may have had some development along their shorelines.

The scenic quality within the river corridor and watershed results from a combination of rock formations, water clarity, waterforms, vegetative features and landforms. The lower section of the Recreational river flows through a steep canyon with exposed rock surfaces, forming an inner-gorge environment. Upstream, the gorge widens slightly, but the adjacent lands remain very steep.

The narrowness of the main river canyon limits the time a traveler would be able to view visual intrusions from the river road. The stream banks are well vegetated and limit the viewscape. The principle viewpoints are from the river road that parallels the river for nearly all of the recreational section.

Rock types in the watershed contribute to the variety of water color, and clarity. The Elk River flows clear to crystalline blue-green water. The water course has interesting patterns of deep pools interspersed with small boulder rapids. Steep whitewater cascades have larger boulders with numerous waterfalls and plunge pools. In winter, water cascades from steep tributaries and slopes along the Elk River.

The variety of the vegetation types in the watershed creates visual diversity. Large old growth conifers, big-leaf maple, red alder and other deciduous trees and shrubs, meadows and moss covered rocks within the corridor provide variety to the color, texture, and structure of the setting.

North and South Forks of the Elk: Upstream from the confluence, both forks of the river have steeper gradients. Slopes are densely forested above the North Fork. The road follows the South Fork, moving away from the river, with long, extended views. Past harvest and road activities can be seen above the South Fork.

Middle and Upper Elk: The Elk River from the Fish Hatchery to the confluence of the North and South Forks flows through a steep, narrow canyon. Streambanks are densely forested interspersed with bedrock outcrops. The Elk River road (Forest Service Road 5325) parallels the river's route, providing repeated short views to the river and steep south facing slopes throughout much of its stretch. Dense vegetation can limit views of the river during the spring and summer. In some viewpoints the "detail" of the landscape can be seen along the river bottom and on slopes above the river. The road is often the only obvious alteration of the otherwise natural setting.

Lower Elk: The lower portion of the Elk River (from the coast to the fish hatchery) flows through a wide valley bottom. The gently rolling hills, pastures, patches of forest and scattered farmhouses characterize a rural, pastoral scene. Portions of the lower river corridor are well developed with many homes. From Highway 101 to the Elk River Fish Hatchery, the Elk River road follows the south side of the wide valley. Long views extend to low-lying hills to the north, beyond the river. Timber management is evident on many of the slopes.

Tributary Landscapes: Blackberry, Butler, Panther and Bald Mountain Creeks are the main river tributaries. The uplands in these drainages have many roads and harvest units. Views are short to moderate, with some extended views in the upper slopes of the subwatersheds. The west half of Butler Creek is in the wilderness.

Wilderness: The Grassy Knob Wilderness is moderately to extremely steep and heavily vegetated. Views are generally short to moderate due to topography and vegetation. Forest Road No. 5105 follows the ridgetop, and the scenic condition is natural-appearing with a dense tree canopy mixed with shrubs along the National Forest section. Near ground views from private lands along Road 5105 show intensive management.

PUBLIC USE VALUES

Access and Travel
Recreation
Landownership and Management Policy

Access and Travel

In prehistoric times, the Elk River corridor provided a travel route between the coast and the interior. The main trail paralleled the river for most of the length of what is now the Recreation Section, then angled up to the main ridge north of the Wild Section. Segments of the trails are still evident.

This trail was the main access to the interior of the area prior to 1920 when the Middle Elk Road was built from Humbug to McGribble. This road was extended to Salal Springs in the early 1930's by the Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC's). As the logging industry developed in the mid 1950's and later, the road system developed until roads connecting the Elk drainage with the South Fork of the Coquille River and the Sixes River were constructed. Other roads now provide access from the east, west, south, and north.

The Elk River road is still the main travel route between the coast and the interior of the Elk River watershed. The road provides access to National Forest land, private land, the south and east edges of the Grassy Knob Wilderness, and the wild and recreation portion of the Elk River. It receives local use from private landowners, logging companies, miners, and recreationists, as well as administrative (Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management, and Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife).

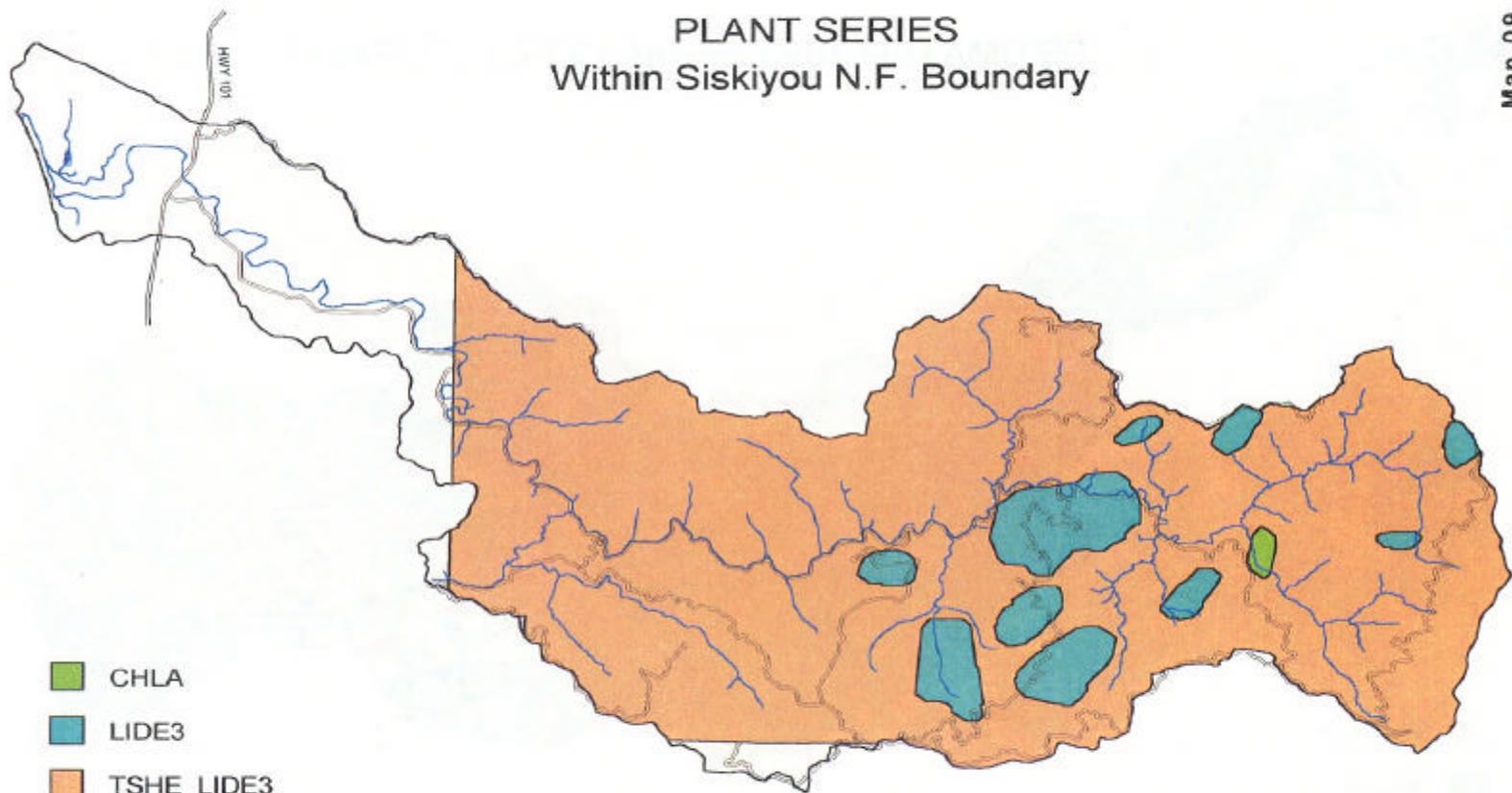
A traffic counter located on the Elk River road at the end of the county road, near the fish hatchery, in March of 1992, has counted an average of 1775 vehicles per month entering and leaving the National Forest. The highest period of use is generally May through October, with some peaks during the fishing and hunting seasons. The average daily traffic is generally 35 vehicles in the winter, up to 100 or more in the summer. The traffic patterns show most of the daily use is in July and August, where there have been instances of more than 100 vehicles per day. Since the counter was placed, the traffic mix has been 90 to 95% recreational, with the remainder split between commercial and administrative traffic. The recreation traffic appears to go down only slightly with an increase of commercial traffic. See Figure 3.

PLANT SERIES Within Siskiyou N.F. Boundary

Map 09

Elk River - 27

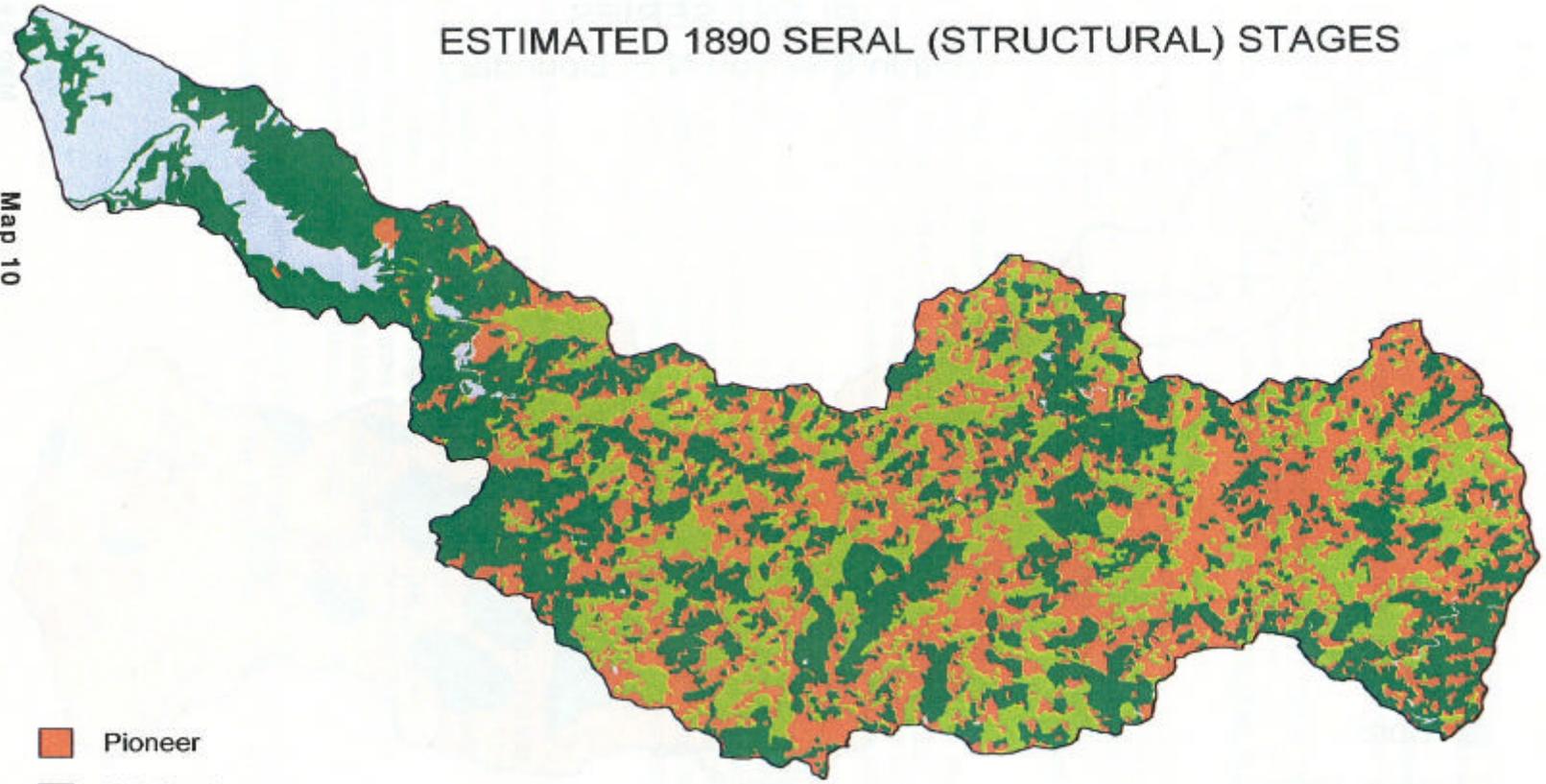
- CHLA
- LIDE3
- TSHE_LIDE3
- Roads
- Streams



Map 10

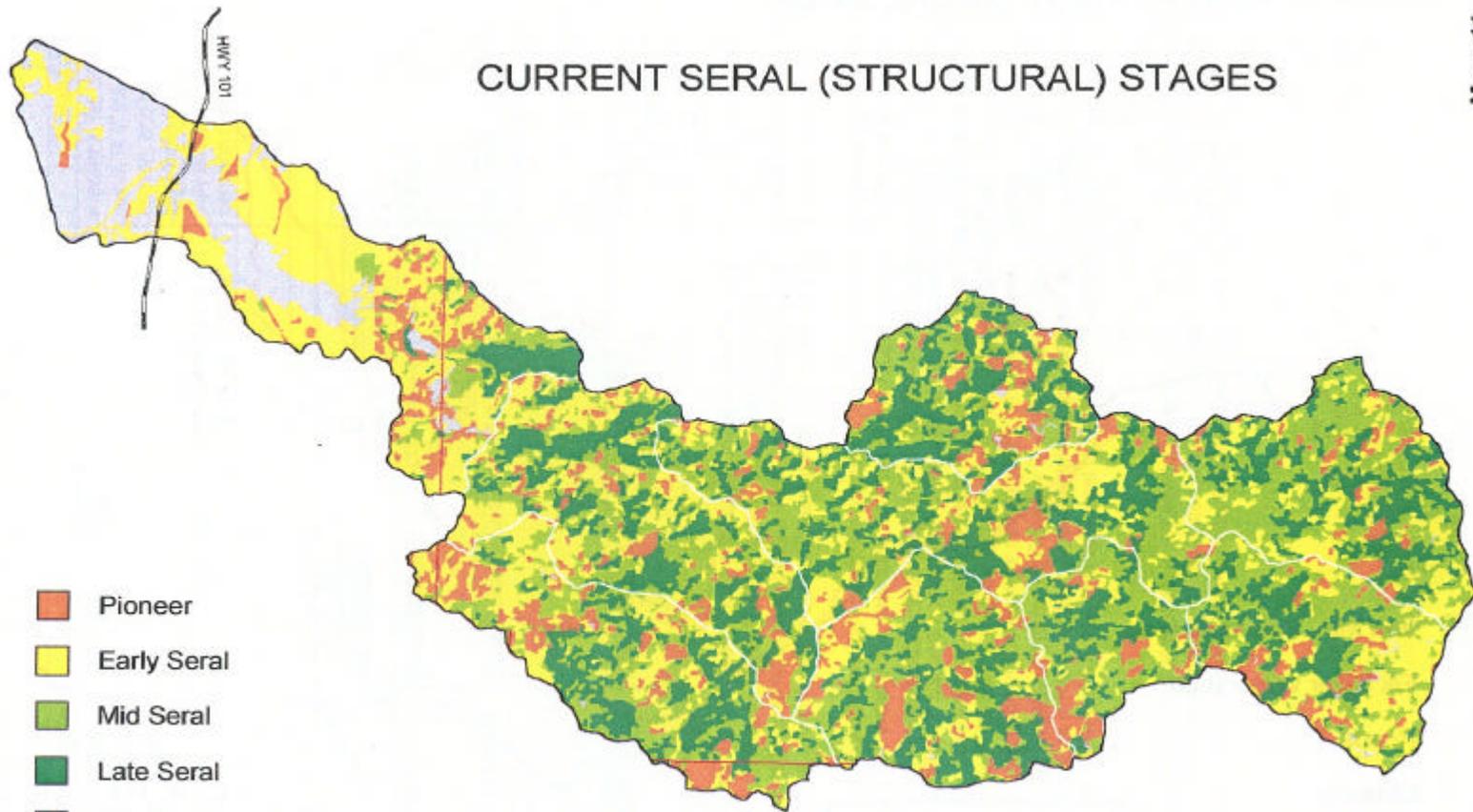
ESTIMATED 1890 SERAL (STRUCTURAL) STAGES

-  Pioneer
-  Mid Seral
-  Late Seral/Climax
-  Non-Forest



CURRENT SERAL (STRUCTURAL) STAGES

Map 11



- Pioneer
- Early Seral
- Mid Seral
- Late Seral
- Non-Forest
- National Forest Boundary
- white lines = Subwatersheds



Map 12

IRON MOUNTAIN BOTANICAL AREA

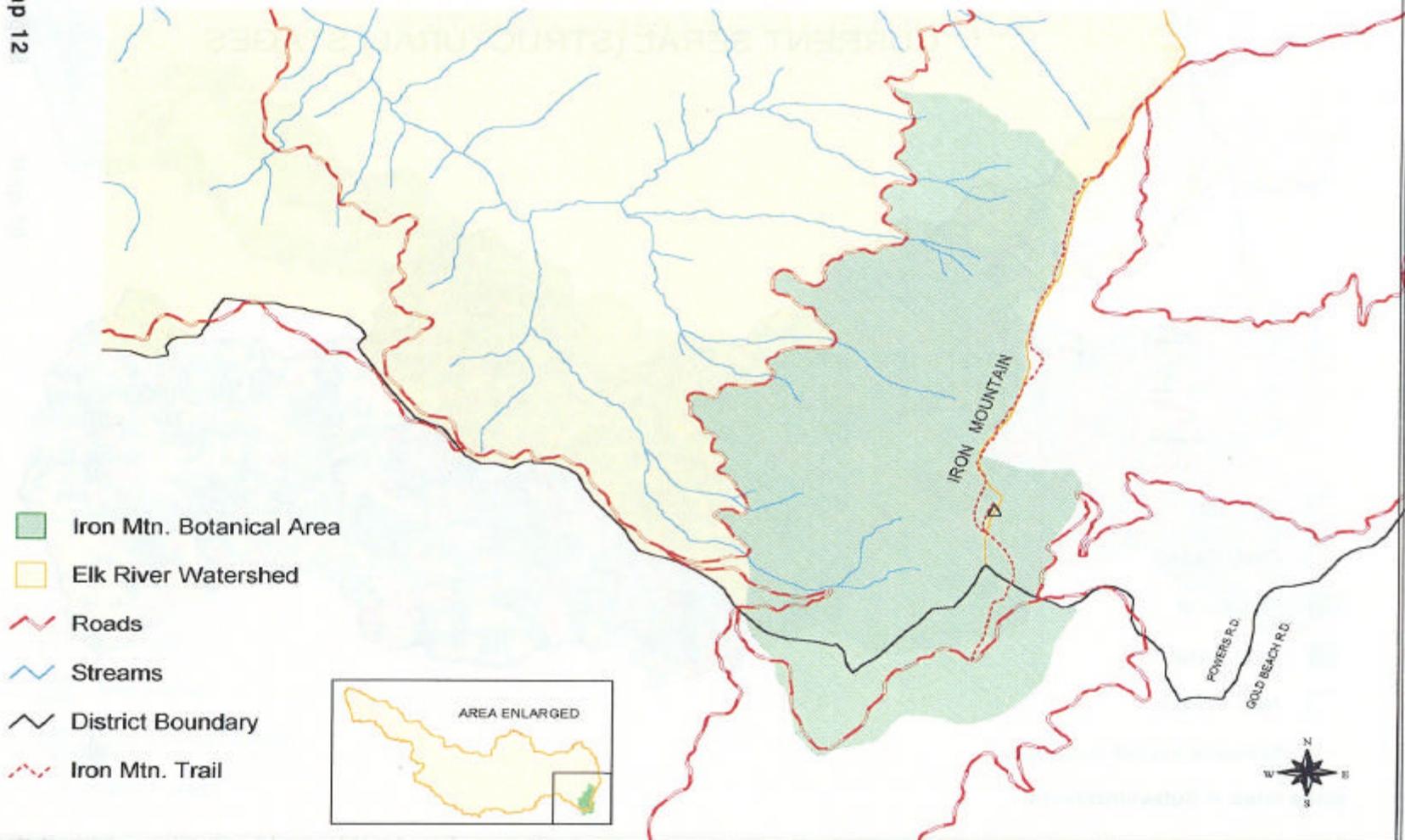
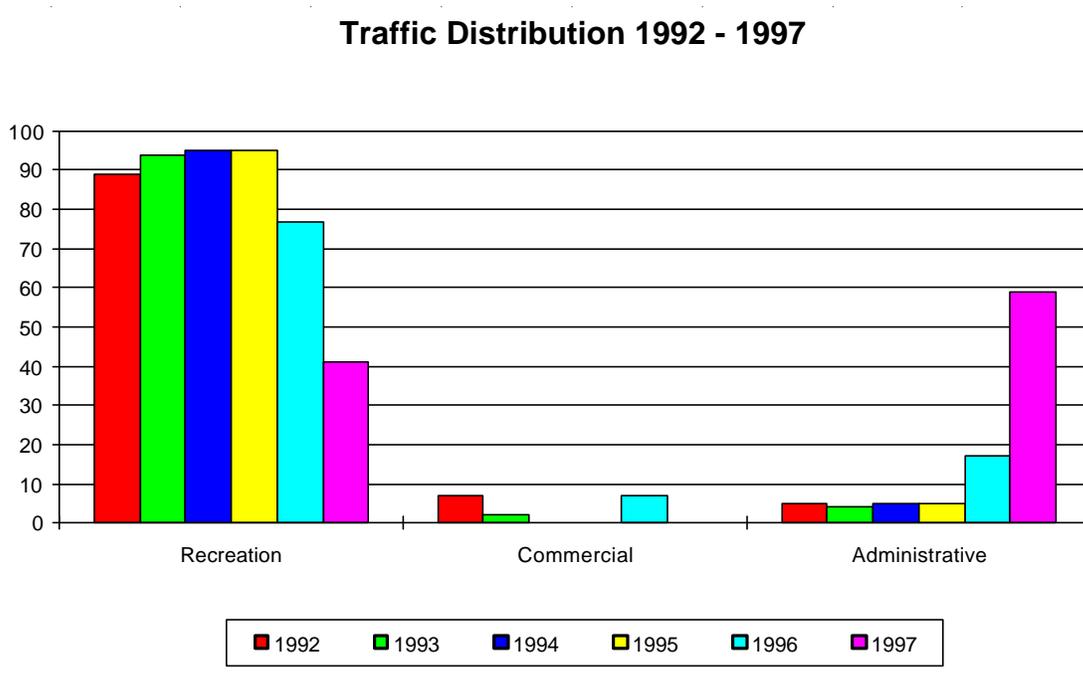
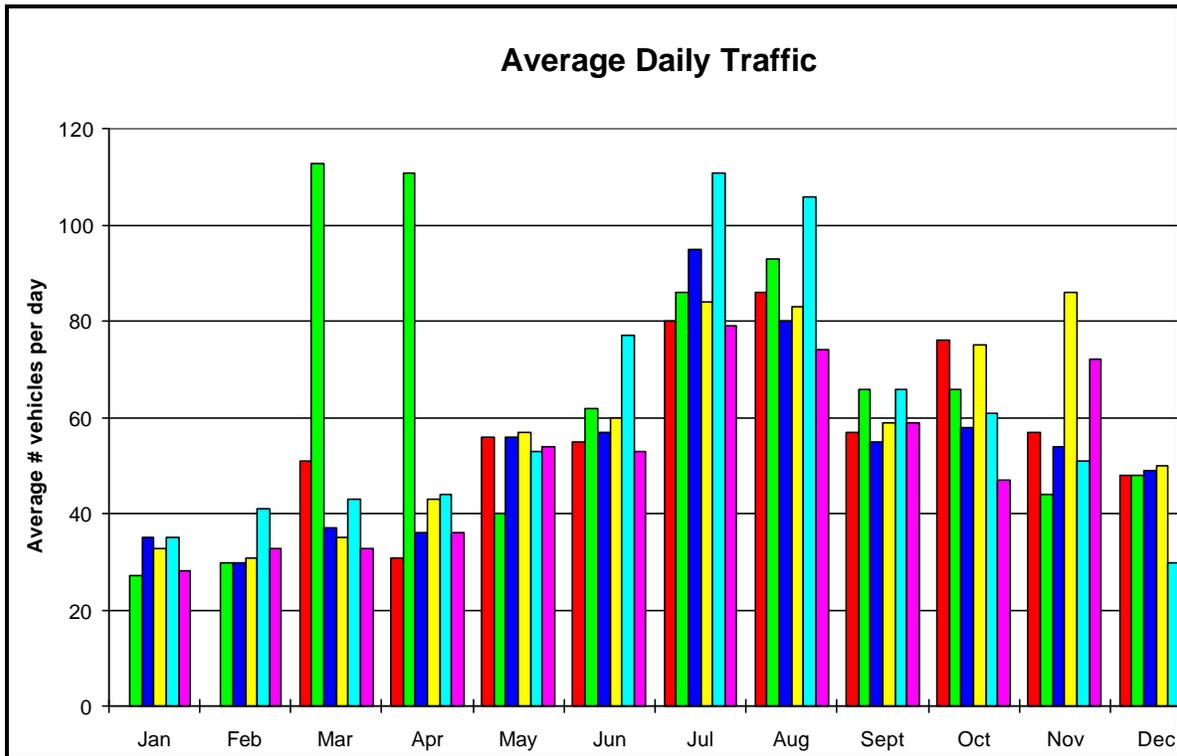


Figure 3: Elk River Traffic Patterns



There are currently about 127 miles of system and non-system roads under Forest Service Management within the Elk River watershed. There are also 68 miles of private, County, and Federal Highway roads within the watershed. Of the 127 miles of road under Forest Service management, 45 miles are maintained for passenger car use, 49 miles are maintained for high clearance vehicle use, and 20 miles are closed to vehicle use, but open for other non-motorized use. There are approximately 13 miles of non-system roads within the watershed. Of these 127 miles of road, 11 miles are double lane and paved, 99 miles are single lane and rock surfaced, and the remainder are single lane roads, with either native soil surface or native rocky surface. The safe travel speeds on most of the roads within the watershed is 25 miles per hour. Since the last Watershed Analysis in 1994, 10 miles of Forest Service managed roads have been permanently closed to protect other nearby resource values. There have been about 0.1 miles of new road constructed and not closed within the watershed. It is not known at this time how many temporary roads have been built, as these are returned to natural conditions after use, and are not considered 'system' roads.

The severe storms of November - December 1996 and January 1997 heavily damaged the road system and changed the traffic patterns and mix of vehicles. As of October 1997, there was an average of 1500 vehicles per month. The percentage of administrative traffic was nearly 60%, while recreation use was just over 40%, with no commercial traffic present. The Elk River road was heavily damaged, along with the tie through Roads 5544 and 5325180, which connect the river corridor to the Iron Mtn. Road 5502. There are 15 to 20 individual damage sites, which include areas of one lane on the main river road, to complete closures due to stream crossing failures on the tie through roads. Most of these sites will be under contract for repair by the fall of 1999. Other repairs will be accomplished as funding allows.

Recreation

With the construction of the Roosevelt Highway (Highway 101) in the 1920's, the southern Oregon coast became a popular recreation area well known for its scenic beauty. Recreational use within the river corridor has increased over the years. Fishing has become one of the most popular water-related activities of the area. Local residents of the area and visitors fish from drift boats or from the banks of the river, from the fish hatchery to the river's mouth.

Less recreation occurs inland from the fish hatchery, on National Forest land, and it is concentrated within the river corridor. Residents of nearby communities use the river in the summer months for swimming, picnicking, sightseeing, and mining. Elk River receives light whitewater boating use, primarily between the fish hatchery and Slate Creek. Kayaks are the most common river craft. Rafts are occasionally seen on several sections of the river.

A few local residents hike and camp in the area, but these activities remain at low levels, and are limited by wet winters and steep terrain. Eight dispersed campsites are located along the river, including Sunshine Bar, which has a capacity of 35 people. Most of these campsites are primitive; only Sunshine Bar has a vault-type toilet. The lower portion of Sunshine Bar was damaged by the November 1996 flood event.

Developed sites are found at Butler Bar and Laird Lake. Butler Bar has 8 camp sites and Laird Lake has 4 sites. Campgrounds are less than 50% full on summer weekends, and receive very little use in the winter months. The steep topography adjacent to the river limits the construction of additional developed recreation sites on National Forest. Additional discussion of recreation in the Elk River can be found in the Management Plan, Elk Wild and Scenic River (USDA 1994).

Three maintained ridgeline trails in the area receive light use: Barklow Mountain, Grassy Knob, and Iron Mountain trails. All three trails lead to abandoned lookout sites and offer scenic views of the surrounding mountains. The Pacific Ocean is visible from the summit of Grassy Knob. No trails exist within the river corridor. Trail use is generally related to hunting in the area, with some people hiking for pleasure. Approximately 80 visits occurred within Grassy Knob Wilderness in calendar year 1991 (the last year data is available).

None of the current campgrounds or dispersed areas meet accessibility standards stipulated in the Americans with Disabilities Act.

The Siskiyou Forest Plan FEIS identified three classifications of recreation experience in the Elk River watershed. The classifications are based on the Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS), an inventory system which recognizes the quality aspects of recreation experience. The first class, Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized (SPNM), is characterized by a predominantly natural or natural-appearing environment of moderate to large size. User interaction is low, but there may be evidence of other users. This classification includes the Wild section of the river, the Copper Mountain Roadless Area, and the Grassy Knob Roadless Area on the west side of the Grassy Knob Wilderness, for a total of 4500 acres. The second type is Roaded Natural (RN), which includes most of the watershed and the Recreation section of the river (30,000 acres). The remaining classification is Wilderness (WRS - Semi-primitive) where recreation opportunities are predominantly unmodified and user interaction is moderate. This includes 9400 acres of the Grassy Knob Wilderness and much of the north half of the Recreation section of the river.

A portion of two subwatersheds, the North and South Forks are mostly unroaded. There has been discussion with community leaders about these roadless areas and adjacent areas in the Elk River watershed being redesignated as Wilderness. No formal proposal has been submitted through congressional representatives as of December, 1997.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY VALUES

Values associated with environmental quality and ecology are addressed in two categories; those associated with the **terrestrial ecosystem** and those associated with the **aquatic ecosystem**. Within each category are specific components which are key to each ecosystem's function. These key components are explored in this chapter.

TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Vegetation

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency and Patch Size
Large Woody Material
Subwatershed

A diversity of plant communities and habitats occur within the Elk River watershed. This diversity is influenced by a number of factors including soil types, elevation, aspect, slope, slope position, climate, succession, and various disturbances. The wet coastal climate has been one of the most significant influences on the vegetation of the Elk River. Average annual precipitation ranges from 120 inches at the Elk River Hatchery to 160 inches in the headwaters, with the majority of the rainfall occurring between November and March. The summer dry seasons are moderated by frequent heavy fog, adding to soil moisture by what is known as "fog drip." (Fog drip is moisture that has collected on vegetation where it may accumulate in sufficient quantities to drip atmospheric moisture to the forest floor).

Vegetation composition in the watershed is composed of a hardwood/conifer mixture of Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*), western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla*), Port-Orford-cedar (*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*), Jeffrey pine (*Pinus jeffreyi*), sugar pine (*Pinus lambertiana*), western white pine (*Pinus monticola*), Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*), tanoak (*Lithocarpus densiflorus*), red alder (*Alnus rubra*), madrone (*Arbutus menziesii*), myrtle (*Umbellularia californica*), live oak (*Quercus chrysolepis*), chinkapin (*Castanopsis chrysophylla*), and bigleaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum*). Brewer spruce (*Picea brewerana*) is also found in the watershed. There is also a small population of brewer spruce found along the northern most range of Iron Mountain. The understory will normally consist of huckleberry (*Vaccinium sp.*), salal (*Gaultheria shallon*), rhododendron (*Rhododendron macrophyllum*), vine maple (*Acer circinatum*), willow (*Salix sp.*), and many others. The major plant communities vary in age from very young (early seral) to very mature (late seral - climax) size structures.

The Elk River can be subdivided into “plant series.” A plant series is a classification based on the concept of potential natural vegetation, which is the vegetation that would be present under climax conditions. A climax condition would occur if the site were allowed to grow, undisturbed by fire, insects, diseases, flood, wind, erosion, or humans, in approximately 500 years, theoretically, a stable condition would occur. Plant series common to the Elk River are the Sitka Spruce, Tanoak, Port-Orford-cedar, and Tanoak/Western Hemlock (see Map 9). Each plant series can be further subdivided into plant associations which more specifically describe the characteristics of that particular stand type.

Douglas-fir is the prevalent overstory species in much of the watershed, except near the coast where Sitka spruce and shore pine (*Pinus contorta*) predominate. The coastal dune area is well vegetated by American dunegrass (*Elymus mollis*), and the nonnative European beachgrass, (*Ammophila arenaria*) (Shea 1997, personal communication).

In 1890 the watershed was dominated by late seral to mature western hemlock, Douglas-fir, and Port-Orford-cedar. Approximately 22,500 acres (39%) were probably in this condition at that point in time (Map 10; see Appendix B for definitions). The few natural meadows within the National Forest and the extensive grasslands on the lower flood plains and marine terraces have probably been present for thousands of years as a result of poorly drained soil types, exposure, river fluctuations, burning, and grazing by wild animals.

The current seral stage map illustrates present seral stage conditions in the watershed (Map 11). Tanoak and other hardwood stands are more common in the west end of the watershed, on drier south and west-facing slopes. These stands include some large California waxmyrtle (*Myrica californica*). The few open meadows in the watershed are concentrated in the flat lower valley flood plains, except for Bald Mountain meadows. Approximately 55% of the watershed is presently in mid-to-late seral stages and 7% in non-forested meadows.

The steep and narrow gorges of the main river and tributaries provide aquatic and wet cliff plant habitats. There are also high peaks and ridges present such as Mt. Butler, Grassy Knob, Copper, Barklow, and Iron Mountains. Permanent and semi-permanent standing bodies of water are rare, but Laird, Bluebird, Mountain Wells, and Panther Lakes provide this habitat. Other unique plant areas include the deflation plains, wetlands, and coastal estuaries near the mouth of the river, and the serpentine-peridotite soils on Iron Mountain. Native grasses and prairie vegetation may still be found in two meadows, such as the one just southeast of the summit of Bald Mountain, and another 1/4 mile east of the old McGribble Campground.

The westside of Iron Mountain above Road 3353 is the Iron Mountain Botanical Area. This area includes most of the west and south sides of Iron Mountain, and encompasses about 1,866 acres (see Map 12). The west side drains almost entirely into the headwaters of Elk River. At least 300 plant species occur on Iron Mountain, representing a very diverse flora (Baker 1956). This is partly due to the several different rock types which make up the mountain, such as serpentine, sandstone, siltstone, and metavolcanics. Approximately 60 species attain their known northern limits here, and nine species reach their southern limits. The California pitcher-plant grows on many acres across the westside in wet serpentine-peridotite bogs. Other unusual or rare plants include Bolander's hawkweed, Piper's bluegrass, Howell's manzanita, Volmer's lily, huckleberry oak, Sadler's oak, and Brewer spruce.

Only one plant species is listed as “Sensitive” by the U.S. Forest Service within this watershed, Howell's manzanita (*Arctostaphylos hispidula*). It is found in small numbers on the summits of Mt. Butler and Iron Mountain.

Figure 4: Rare and Listed Plant Species in the Elk River Watershed

Common Name	Latin Name	Status	Habitat
Coast fawn-lily	<u>Erythronium revolutum</u>	Oregon Natural Heritage program "watch list"	Present in fair numbers on wet cliffs in the North Fork canyon, and in wet sites near McGribble Campground
Western lily	<u>Lilium occidentale</u>	Endangered by the Federal government	May occur in the wet coastal deflation plains
large-flowered goldfields	<u>Lasthenia macrantha</u>		
silvery phacelia	<u>Phacelia argentea</u>		
pink sand verbena	<u>Abronia umbellata</u>		
seaside gilia	<u>Gilia millifoliata</u>	"species of concern" (Rittenhouse 1997)	
Candystick	<u>Allotropa virgata</u>	On the U.S. Forest Service "survey and manage" list	Present on Iron Mountain
California fuschia	<u>Zauschneria latifolia</u>	not a listed species	Very rare on the Powers Ranger District. Its only known location on the district is in the headwaters of Butler Creek
Brewer spruce	<u>Picea breweriana</u>		North and west slopes of the Iron Mountain summit (Shea 1996)

Approximately 75 species of exotic plants grow in the watershed, including about 20 grasses, seven shrubs, and 50 forbs (Shea 1993; Appendix C). The fertile soils and forgiving climate are very conducive to these fast-growing nonnative species. Most became established as a result of overgrazing, escaped ornamentals, general vehicle traffic, timber harvest, road building, and other ground disturbing activities.

Of particular concern are the aggressive gorse and tansy. Tansy is widespread along roadsides and other disturbed areas in the watershed, and has been biologically treated for several years with both the tansy flea beetle (Longitarus jacobaeae) and the cinnabar moth (Tyria jacobaeae). Gorse is present on at least 28 sites on National Forest lands in the watershed, and these sites are regularly monitored and controlled by District personnel and contractors. Gorse plants and shoots are pulled by hand or by choker cable in the spring while the ground is loose and before the plants flower. Aggressive control programs have been in operation for several years. In 1996, numerous colonies of the gorse spider mite (Tetranychus lintearius) were established by the Oregon State University Extension Service in the extensive stands in the lower river valley floodplains and foothills. Many acres are presently covered by gorse from the National Forest boundary west to the Pacific Ocean as a result of plantings escaped from the Bandon area.

A seed mixture of several exotic species developed by the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife was routinely broadcast-seeded for revegetation projects in the watershed for many years. Sources of native seed are now available and the broadcast seeding of exotics is being discontinued.

Figure 5: List of Nonnative Species found in the Elk River Watershed.

Common Name	Latin Name
dogtail	<u>Cynosurus echinatus</u>
velvetgrass	<u>Holcus lanatus</u>
silver hairgrass	<u>Aira caryophyllea</u>
European beachgrass	<u>Ammophila arenaria</u>
oxeye daisy	<u>Chrysanthemum leucanthemum</u>
foxglove	<u>Digitalis purpurea</u>
Klamathweed	<u>Hypericum perforatum</u>
coast fireweed	<u>Erechtites prenanthoides</u>
tansy	<u>Senecio jacobaea</u>
Himalayan blackberry	<u>Rubus discolor</u>
Scotch and French brooms	<u>Cytisus</u>
gorse	<u>Ulex europaeus</u>
Japanese fleecflower	<u>Polygonum cuspidatum</u>
moth mullein	<u>Verbascum blattaria</u>

Further information on Elk River plant species may be found in the Powers Herbarium plant collection, and in a Checklist of Common Plants on the Powers Ranger District (Shea 1992).

Another important exotic is Port-Orford-cedar root disease (*Phytophthora lateralis*). This disease affects Port-Orford-cedar (*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*), which is a minor but valuable component of the Elk River watershed (see Map 13). Port-Orford-cedar provides an important component of the understory and/or overstory within the watershed. It can provide long-term woody material for fish and riparian structures, as well as large woody material and coarse woody material for small mammals, herbivores, amphibians, mosses, lichens, etc. on the forest floor. It has a high value as a timber product, as well as for special forest products. Large Port-Orford-cedar may provide an exceptional nesting and roosting habitat for woodpeckers and other bird species.

Humans have been responsible for the transport of the disease when mud containing spores attached to machinery was transported over long distances between infected and uninfected areas. Once the fungus is in a new area, it can move in water downslope from the infected site. High risk areas are streams, drainages, low laying areas downslope from infected areas, and roadways. Potentially high risk areas for disease spread are located in the Iron Mountain area of the Elk River. Port-Orford-cedar occurs in relatively high amounts in this area, partly due to the year around water flow and the ability of Port-Orford-cedar to out compete other species on the harsh serpentine sites.

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency

Natural disturbances in the terrestrial ecosystem include large scale fires and episodes of windthrow caused by cyclonic events such as the Columbus Day storm of 1962. These disturbances have been relatively infrequent in the Elk River watershed. However, northwesterly high winter winds often occur and wind damage is common. In higher elevations snow and ice damage may also occur. Fire is the most common disturbance agent in all of the South Coast watersheds. (USDI-USDA 1995)

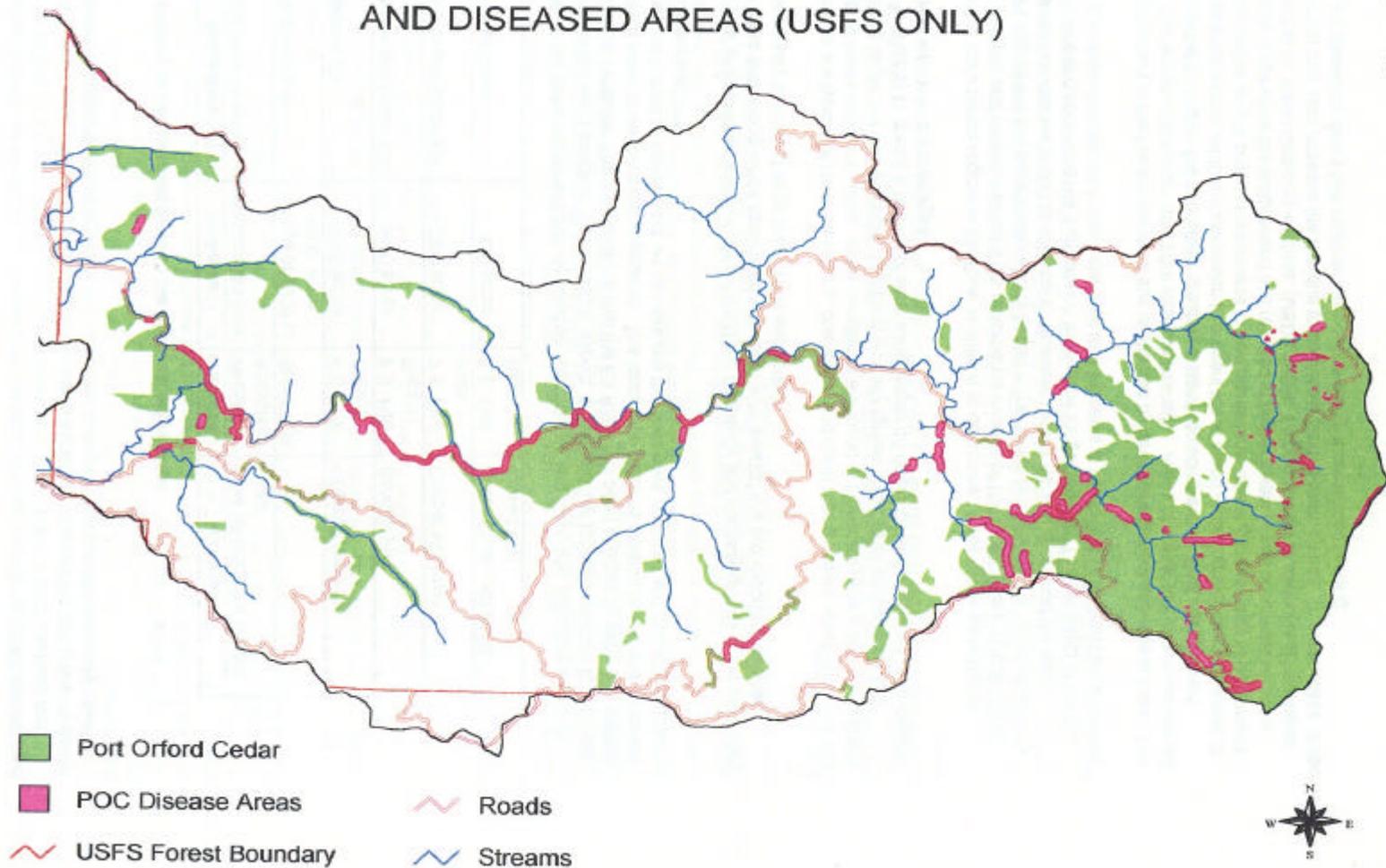
Disturbance interval is a measure of how often the vegetation is disturbed or set back to an earlier successional stage. The Elk River has a relatively long disturbance interval when compared to other watersheds with plant series typical of drier climates. General processes were deduced based on review of

available aerial photographs, anecdotal fire references, fire report documents, tree stand age data and evidence of fire scarred trees and snags.

PORT ORFORD CEDAR OCCURRENCE AND DISEASED AREAS (USFS ONLY)

Map 13

Eik River - 33



The vegetation patterns we see today are the result of past disturbances, prior to the 1850s this included lightning caused fires and the burning done by native americans. From the mid 1800's settlers and miners added disturbance influences to the landscape which sometime included the use of fire. A policy of fire suppression began in the early 1900s and intensified during the mid part of the century. (see Figure 6)

Figure 6: History of Widespread Fires in the Elk River Watershed

Year	Subwatershed	Acres	Source	Comments
1868	Elk River Drainage	Widespread fires	Historic Accounts	Fires all along the Oregon Coast.
1910	Blackberry & Panther	~range of 2000 to 4000 acres	Stand Age	
1929	Middle Elk	9000 acres	F.S. Fire Report	Grassy Knob Fire
1929	North and Upper Elk	9600 acres	F.S. Fire Report	Barklow Fire
1930's	North and South Elk	~2000 acres	F.S. Fire Atlas	Copper Mountain Fire
1961	Butler Creek	330 acres	F.S. Fire Report	Butler Creek (industrial caused fire)

Components of the fire environment include weather, topography, and fuels, and individual elements such as wind speed, wind direction, fuel moisture, aspect, slope, and fuel tonages combine to produce characteristic fire behavior. There is evidence that the Elk River has been effected by large and intense wildfires, which killed or set back the vegetation. The landscape patterns created by low and moderate intensity fires are harder to identify, but we can assume that they have occurred and that they function to reduce fuel accumulations.

The nearly year around moist weather pattern limits the frequency and intensity of fires in the watershed. The dry air mass and strong winds associated with "east wind events" are two important weather elements necessary to product large fires in this watershed.

Moist conditions are typical of lower elevations, drainages, and north facing slopes, which limits fire size and intensity at these locations. Drier, windy conditions are found at higher elevations and on southerly aspects making larger fire size possible. Lightning typically ignites fires higher on the slope and ridgetops. This tends to create a pattern of early seral stages on ridgetops and midslopes, with mature and old growth stands in the drainages.

The natural fire disturbance regime in Elk River is difficult to determine. Fires set by early Native Americans, settlers, and miners created a fire disturbance interval of 100 to 300 years. (USDI-USDA. 1995) More aggressive fire suppression efforts began in the 1930s lengthening the hypothetical non-harvest disturbance interval to 300 to 400 years. However, timber harvest shortened the stand replacement time and continued fire suppression mimics the longer regime. The net effect of the two processes is a vegetative pattern in the watershed that indicates a 100 to 200 year disturbance interval.

The only component in the fire environment that is effected by land management activities is fuels. The quantity of fuel accumulations can affect fire size and intensity. Areas of higher fuel accumulations will have the potential for higher fire intensities, creating a stand replacing event. Past management practices has emphasized wildfire suppression to prevent these stand replacing events and the loss of merchantable timber and to protect investments in tree plantations, thinnings, and other developments. In many cases, aggressive fire suppression has resulted in higher levels of fuel accumulation and a greater potential for stand replacing wildfires. (USDA 1989) Timber harvest or silvicultural treatments such as thinning may also increase fire risk due to additional slash accumulations. In some cases, these conditions are abated by direct fuel treatment like debris piling or prescribed burning.

Landscape Patterns: Patch size

The forested portion of the watershed is a patchwork of different age classes. At one time, the river corridor was forested all the way to the coast. Much of the lower watershed is now cleared and its predominant use is agricultural. Low intensity fires have left most mature patches of conifers on north-facing slopes. Moderate intensity fires have occurred on the upper one-third of west-facing slopes averaging 75 acres in size. High intensity fires have occurred most often in upper, south-facing slopes and average 280 acres in size. The maximum size of existing patches is approximately 4000 acres; the minimum patch size is measured at less than one acre. The patches created by historical disturbance events such as fire or windthrow generally vary between 20 and 200 acres. For the Northwest Coast LSR, which includes Elk River, patch sizes are smaller than the Siskiyou National Forest as a whole. This is the case for the Western Hemlock (TSHE) and Tanoak (LIDE3) Plant Series (USDI-USDA. 1995).

Timber harvest in the watershed has created different types of patches than the natural patterns created by wildfires and windthrow. The harvested areas generate single-storied stands similar to high-intensity, stand replacement fires. Harvested areas are dissimilar in that they are generally 10 to 40 acres and smaller than those created by either moderate or high intensity wildfires. Harvested areas also tend to have very smooth uniform edges which are not a feature of natural disturbance events.

Large woody material

Fire, wind, insects, and disease produce the snag and large woody material (LWM) component within the watershed. Large woody material (LWM) is plentiful after each natural disturbance, and decay causes it to gradually decrease through time. LWM reaches its lowest level about 100 years after disturbance (Harmon et al., 1985). At stand age 100 years, tree mortality begins to add large wood back to the forest floor at a rate greater than the decay rate. These levels of LWM accumulation, around age 100 are used to develop standards, guidelines, and monitoring standards for management activities (see Siskiyou Supplement on LWM/WRT/Snags). (Harbert 1993).

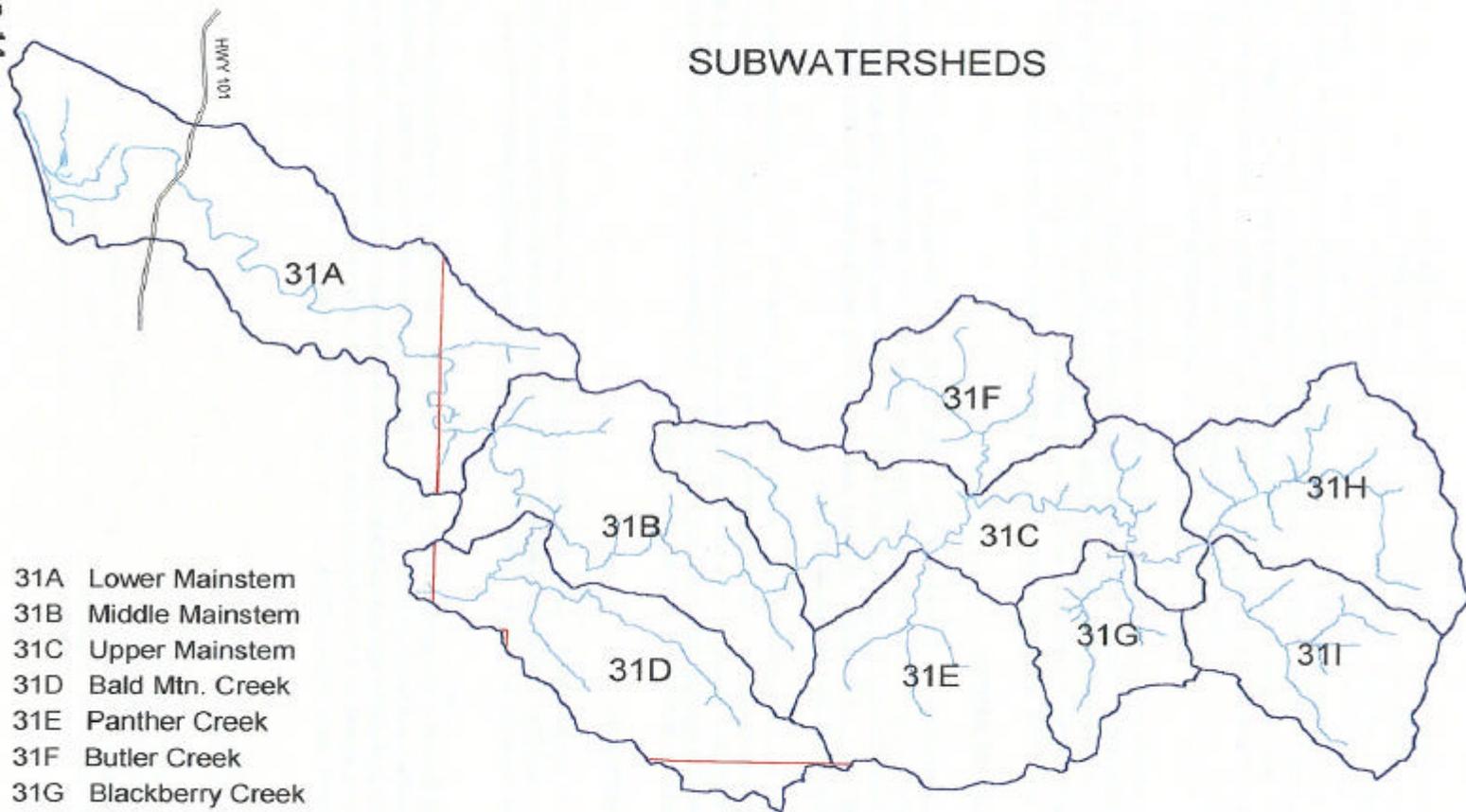
Subwatersheds

Elk River has six major tributaries with drainage areas known as subwatersheds. The six subwatersheds range in size from 3,000 to 9,000 acres and are displayed in Map 14. Within the watershed, numerous smaller tributaries to Elk River (known as "facing" drainages) are grouped into lower, middle and upper areas.

The Elk River is a structurally diverse (Map 11) watershed. A clear depiction of this is shown in Figure 7, which utilizes a stacked bar graph to display the distribution of late, mid, early, pioneer, and non-forest seral stage structure across subwatersheds. For more information on the definitions of these seral stage structures, as well as a complete list of acres and percent of seral stages per subwatershed please see Appendix B, seral stage structure.

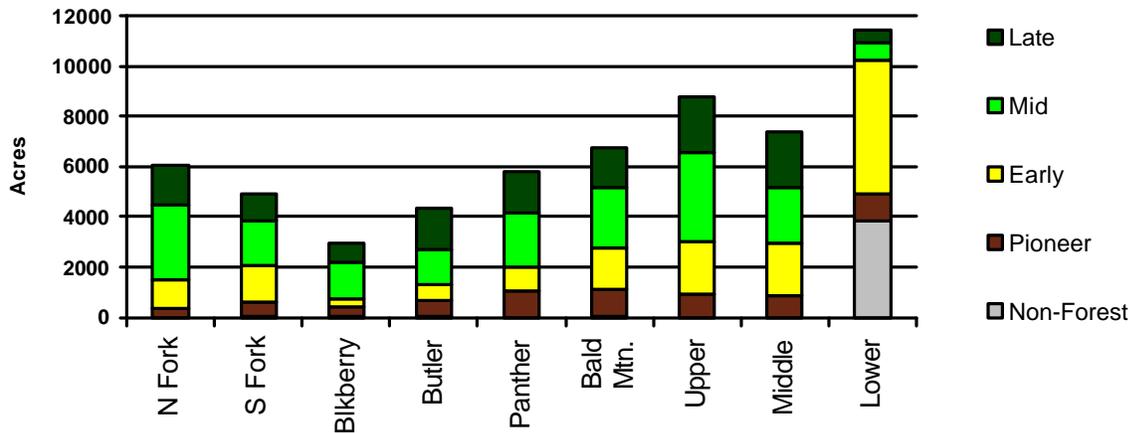
Map 14

SUBWATERSHEDS



- 31A Lower Mainstem
- 31B Middle Mainstem
- 31C Upper Mainstem
- 31D Bald Mtn. Creek
- 31E Panther Creek
- 31F Butler Creek
- 31G Blackberry Creek
- 31H North Fork Elk
- 31I South Fork Elk
-  National Forest Boundary
-  Streams

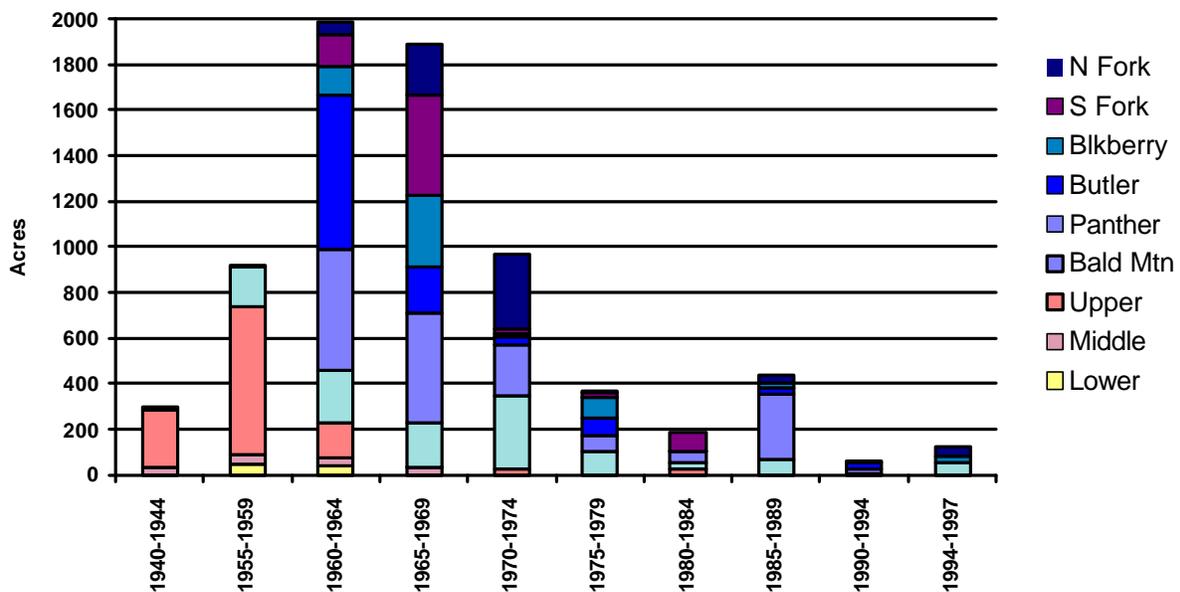
Figure 7: Seral Stage Structure by Subwatershed



Typically timber harvest tended to occur in close association (physically on the landscape) with other harvest units to form contiguous blocks of similar seral structure. In essence, a minimally fragmented landscape across many of the subwatersheds created by past management (see Map 15). As shown, much of the past timber harvest on Federal lands occurs in connected blocks. Exceptions to this are units within the North Fork and Panther Creek subwatersheds. More information on fragmentation within North Fork and Panther Creek Subwatersheds is available in the narrative pertaining to each individual subwatershed.

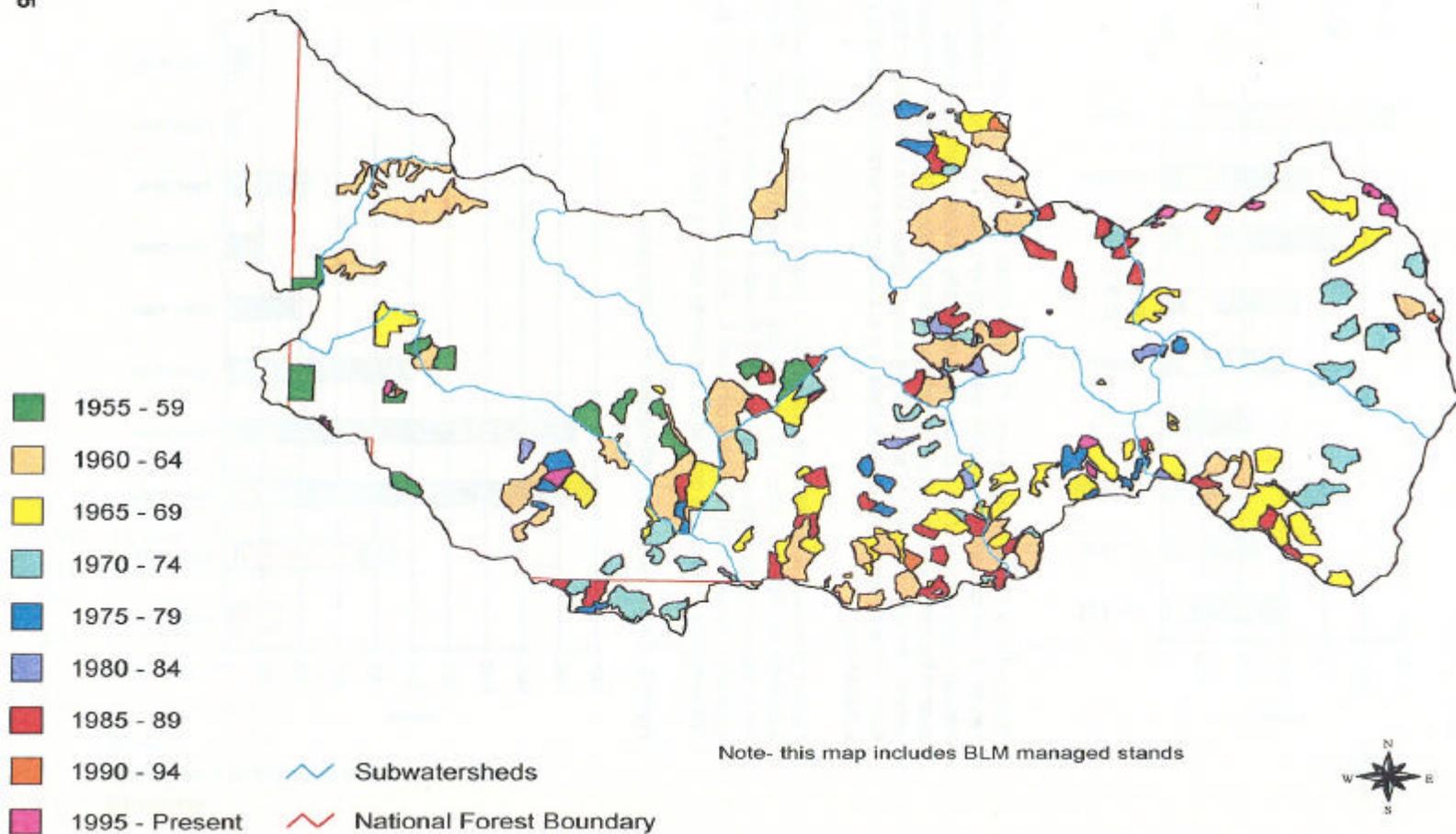
Figure 8 provides a visual display of past harvest on Federal lands by half-decade across each subwatershed. As shown, timber harvest was very prolific during the early 1960's. This was primarily due to salvage harvest of the effects of the 1962 Columbus Day storm that blew down hundreds (703) of acres within the watershed. The peak of harvest in the watershed can be attributed to this event and related salvage. Harvest has dropped off significantly since the 1960's.

Figure 8: Timber Harvest by Half-Decade on Federal Lands



Map 15

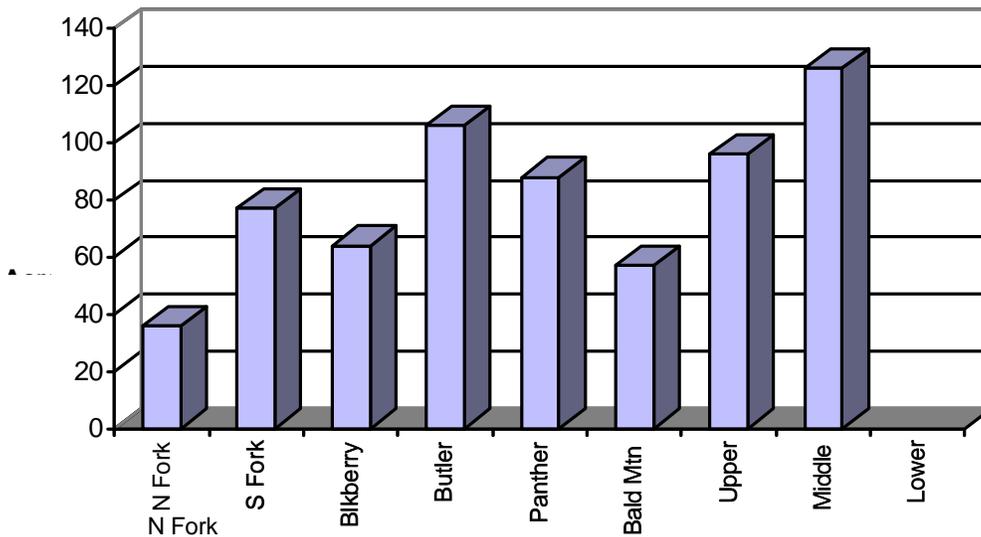
TIMBER HARVEST BY HALF-DECADE



Past harvest practices created patches, usually within the pioneer seral structure. These harvest related patch sizes vary from more than 120 acres to less than 50 acres depending upon the subwatershed. These harvest-related patch sizes were determined for Federal lands across the watershed. Information is incomplete for private lands in the Lower Mainstem and Bald Mountain Creek subwatersheds. This reflects clearly in Figure 9 where no information is available in the Lower Mainstem. The lack of information is less clear in Bald Mountain Creek. It is highly likely that when private information for Bald Mountain Creek is added that the average patch size will increase, with the addition of private timber harvest acres in the lower portion of the Bald Mountain Creek Subwatershed.

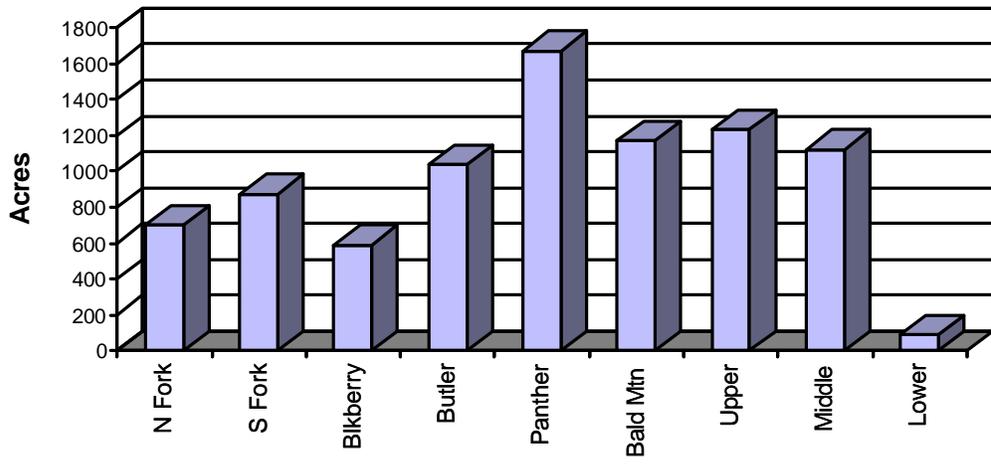
More information on natural disturbance patch size is available in a brief discussion earlier in this document (see Terrestrial Ecosystem: Disturbance Frequency) and in the Southern Oregon Late-Successional Reserve Assessment for the Northwest Coast Late-Successional Reserve.

Figure 9: Average Patch Size (Harvest-related) by Subwatershed on Federal Lands



Patches created as a result of timber harvest were historically replanted within the first year or two of harvest and burning. Although these units typically were planted primarily with Douglas-fir, the units may also include natural regeneration of western hemlock, Port-Orford-cedar, and tanoak. Another tree species commonly planted in small percentages was sugar pine, although this was not typically done during the 1960's and 1970's. Acres of stands in this condition are displayed in Figure 10.

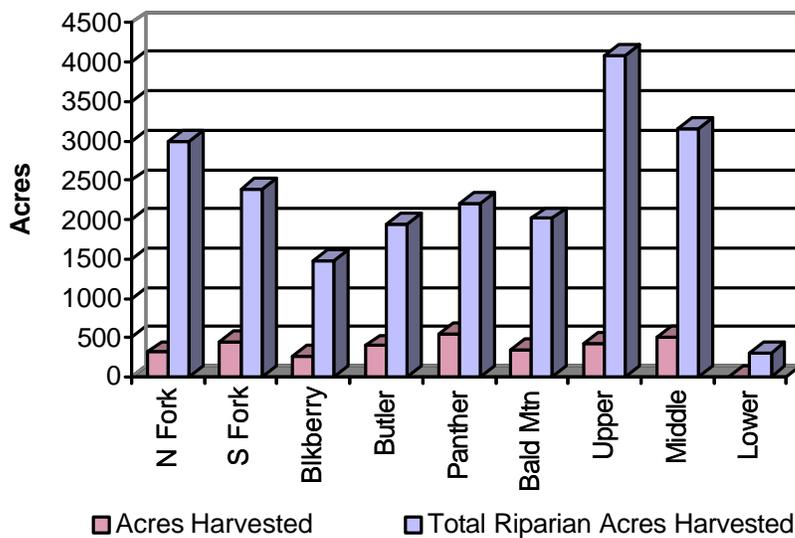
Figure 10: Total Timber Harvest by Subwatershed on Federal Lands



Many of the units harvested, planted, and silviculturally treated (manual released of competing vegetation and pre-commercial thinned), especially those harvested between 1955 and 1979 (see Map 16, Managed stands within LSR), would benefit from some form of commercial thinning to help aid the development toward late-successional habitat. Structure and composition characteristics include interior habitat, large trees, snags, large woody material, multistoried canopies, understory trees, canopy gaps, or patchy understories (LSRA - p.105).

On Federal lands past harvest practices frequently removed trees within riparian areas on intermittent streams. The NFP established Riparian Reserves for all streams. For this analysis a width of 200' on intermittent and non-fish bearing streams and 400' on fish bearing streams was used to determine acres. Figure 11 display's acres of Riparian Reserve treated within each subwatershed alongside total acres of riparian. Opportunities to enhance riparian vegetation may exist within these areas, although site visits are necessary prior to planning and implementing enhancement projects. Within these areas there may be opportunities to plant conifers to enhance stream shading, to contribute to downstream large wood recruitment and to serve as connection corridors for travel from riparian to upland terrestrial areas.

Figure 11: Total Riparian Acres Harvested within Managed Stands on Federal Lands

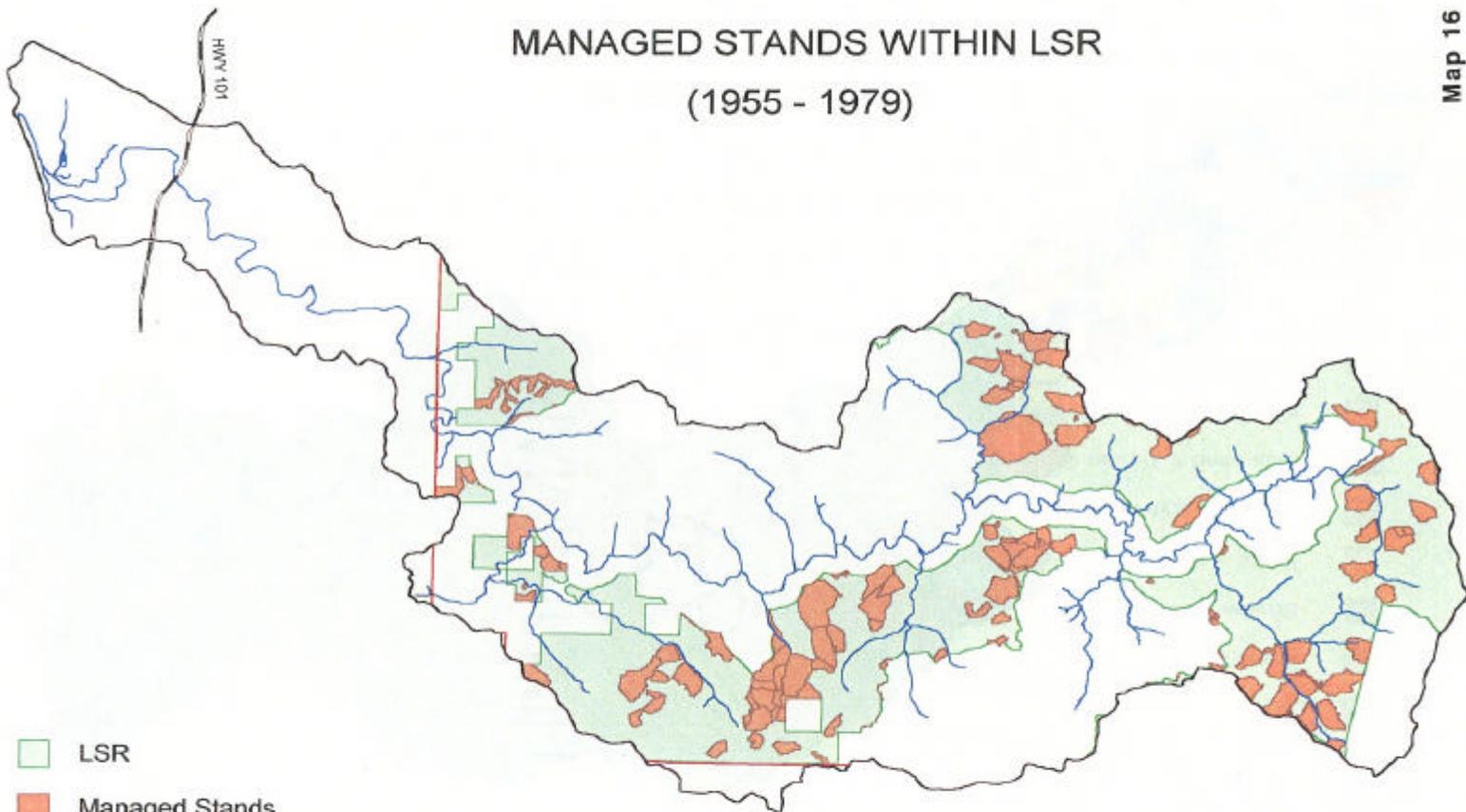


The Elk River watershed contains a myriad of landowners, (see Map 17, Elk River Land Ownership and Appendix D, Elk River Landownership acres). The management direction for individual private landowners is not clear, but is typically that of the homeowner and general farming and ranching. Private timber company direction is to best maximize growth and yield of timber to be produced. Management direction for the remainder of the watershed falls under the NFP. This direction will then depend on the land allocation for which it resides (see Figure 12). A complete list of land allocation acres across the entire watershed and subwatershed are listed in Appendix A.

MANAGED STANDS WITHIN LSR (1955 - 1979)

Map 16

Elk River - 41

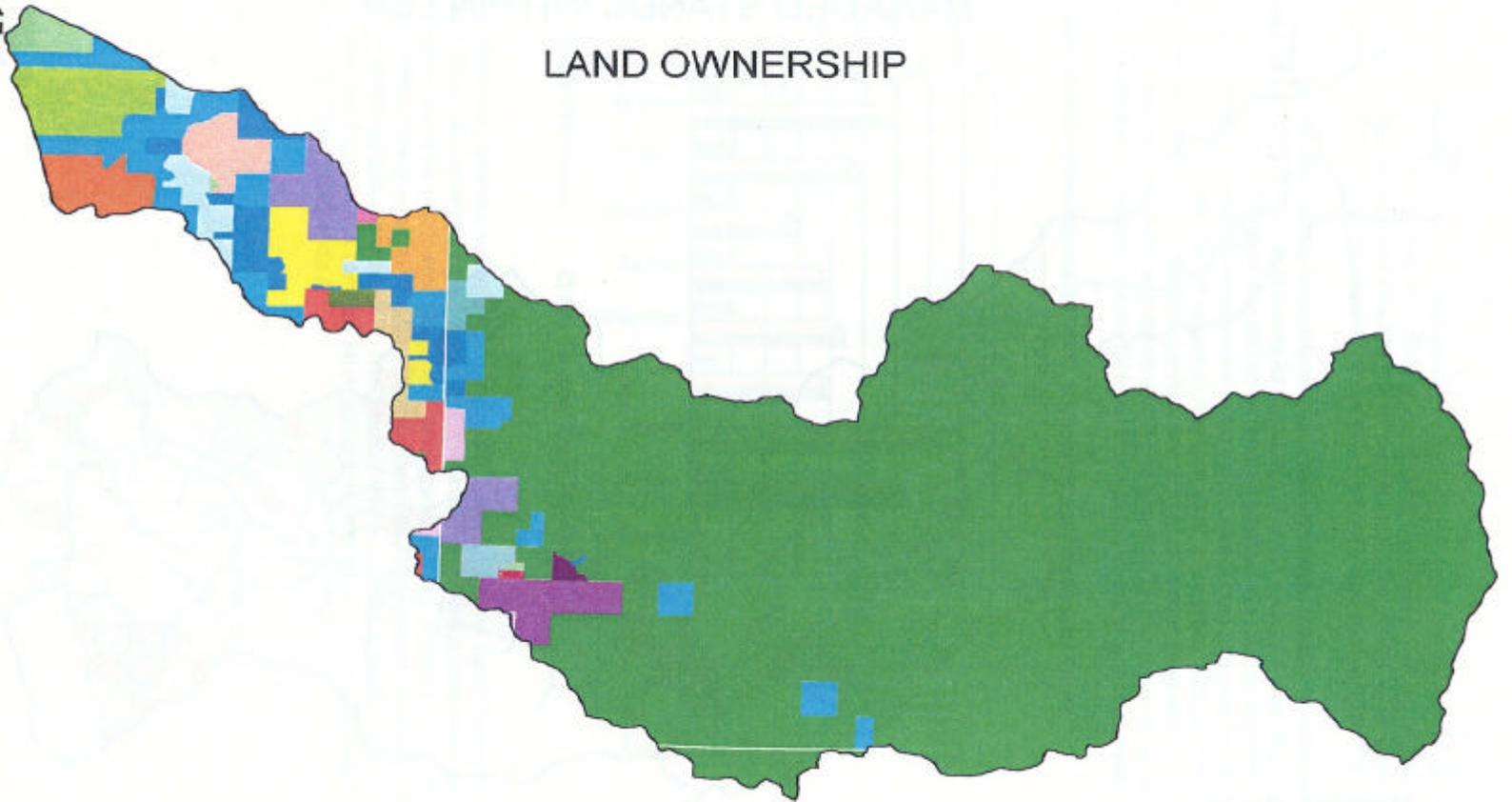


- LSR
- Managed Stands
- ~ Streams
- ~ National Forest Boundary



Map 17

LAND OWNERSHIP

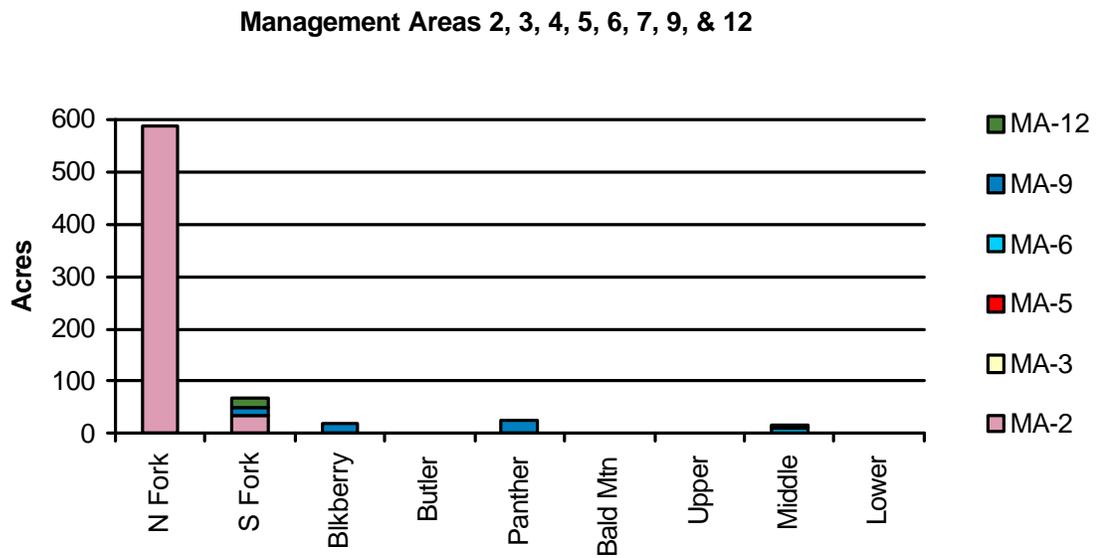
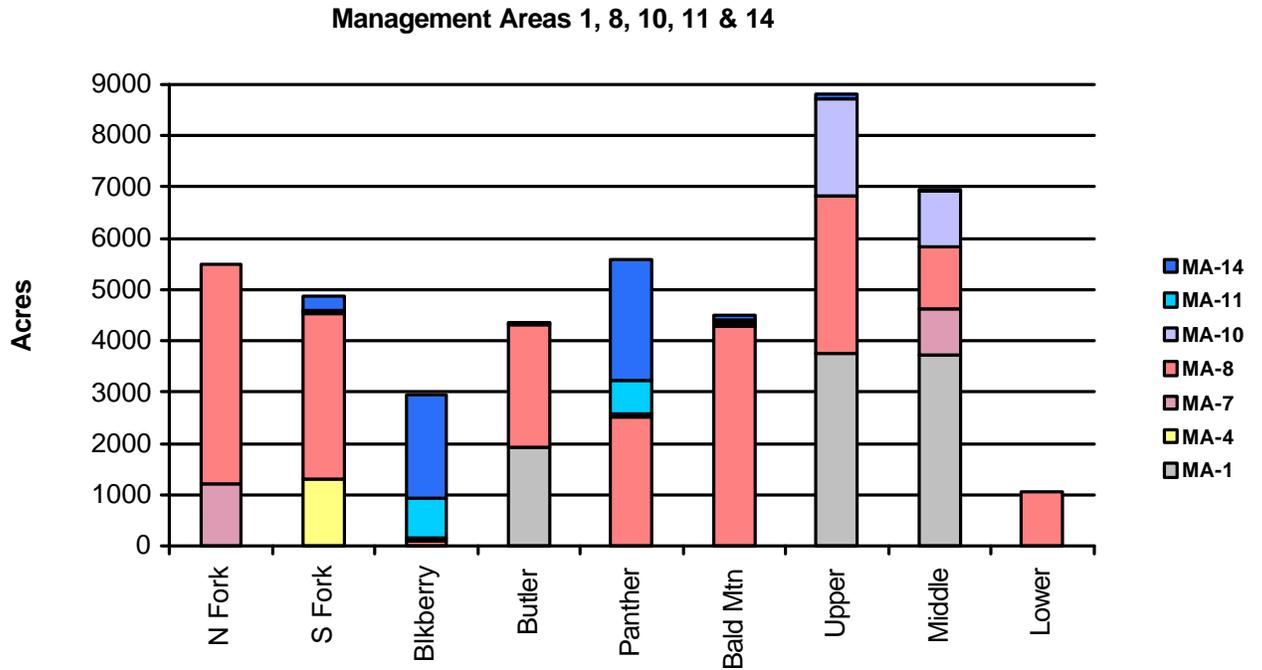


See next page
for map legend



Map 17 legend

Figure 12: Elk River Management Land Allocations on Federal Lands



TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Individual Subwatershed Discussion

North Fork Elk River (31H)

The North Fork is approximately 6,072 acres in size. Elevations range from 4,000 feet along Iron Mountain to near 900 feet at the confluence of North Fork.

Timber harvest has occurred on 467 acres of the 6,072 acre subwatershed. An additional 235 acres of natural stands were manually released from competing hardwood and brush species. This total of 702 acres is displayed in Figure 10. These acres do not fairly represent the assumption that certain environmental effects assumed with a final removal are similar to those 235 acres receiving a manual release or thinning treatment, although the acres are tracked together as managed stands.

Natural disturbance patterns are evident throughout the North Fork where natural fire has replaced stands near the confluence of the North Fork as well as along the divide separating the North Fork of Elk River with the neighboring Sixes Watershed (see Map 18). In 1967 and 1968 manual releases of three large stands (69 - 87 acres in size) occurred in these naturally (fire) created stands. Historic records are vague as to the objectives for this treatment. The assumptions are that treatment was a form of "brush field conversion" in which hardwood species were treated (chemical/manual treatment) to release the conifer species.

The North Fork contains seven harvest units from the late 1960's and early 70's that are 40 to 60 acres in size. These units are islands of pioneer seral stage structure amidst mid to late seral stage structure, fragmenting (at a small scale) the structure of this particular subwatershed. The scale of fragmentation is relatively minimal as only 8% of the 6,000 acres subwatershed has been altered from mid to late seral structure to a pioneer structure size. Fragmentation and increased edges have been created from harvest activities, although very nominal in scale.

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another disturbance agent across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the North Fork subwatershed windthrow and salvage has occurred across approximately nine acres. A small windthrow patch of nine acres, harvested in 1973, is a defining characteristic of the degree of windthrow effects in this subwatershed.

Current ownership within the subwatershed is 100% National Forest.

South Fork Elk River (31I)

The South Fork Elk River is approximately 4,927 acres in size. The elevations range from 4,000 feet in the headwaters along Iron Mountain to near 1,000 feet at the confluence of South Fork Elk and the Elk River.

Natural disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. A stand replacing fire in the early 1900's burned across the lower portion of the subwatershed near the confluence of the South and North Fork (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another relatively significant disturbance across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the South Fork subwatershed windthrow and salvage has not occurred.

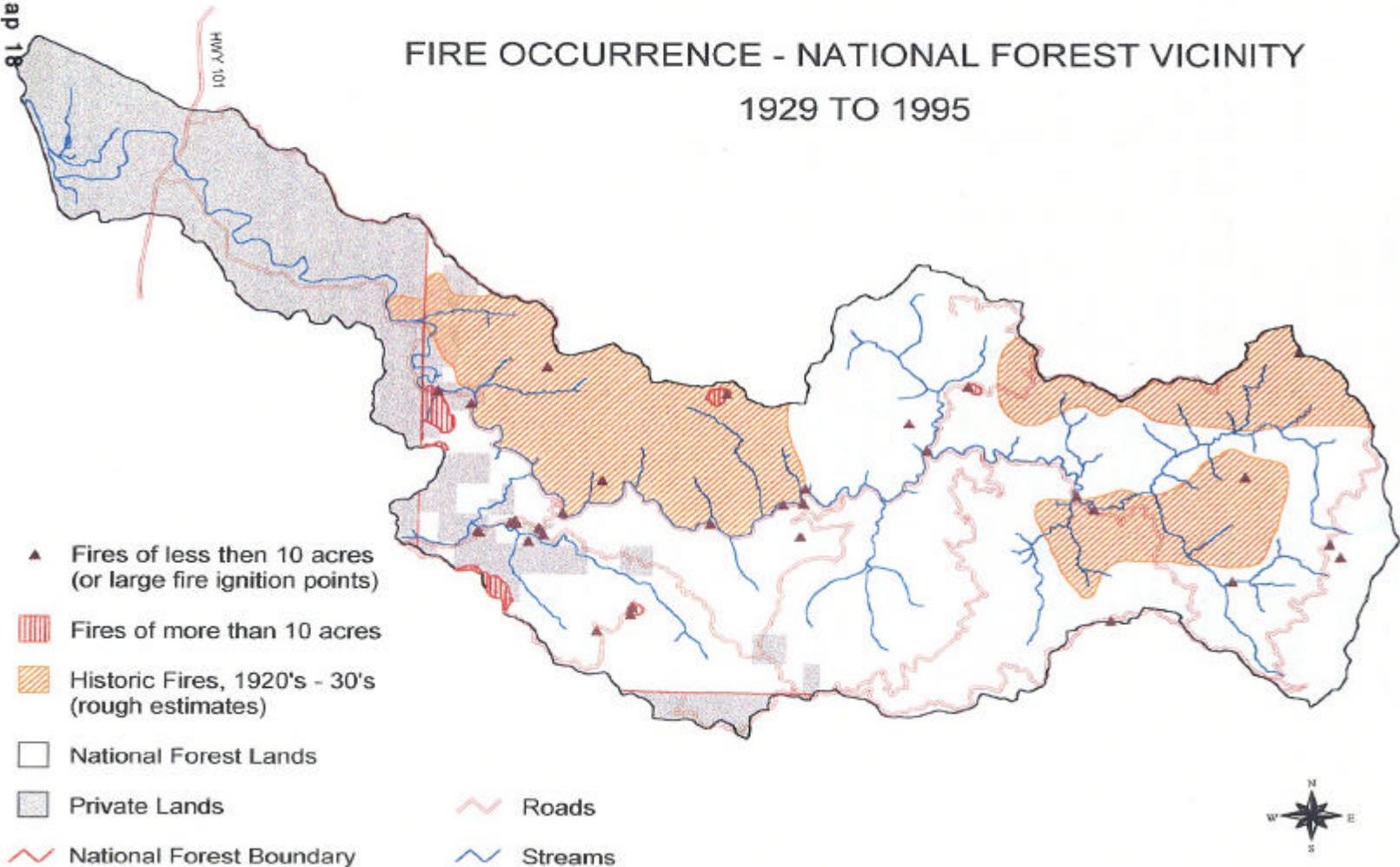
Current ownership within the subwatershed is 100% Federal.

Blackberry Creek (31G)

Blackberry Creek is approximately 2,960 acres in size. Blackberry Creek has two branches, known as the east and west forks. The elevations range from 2,900 feet at Toast Camp to near 750 feet at the confluence of Blackberry Creek and the Elk River.

Map 18

FIRE OCCURRENCE - NATIONAL FOREST VICINITY 1929 TO 1995



Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. A historical fire occurring at the turn-of-the century replaced the previous mature stands into younger, single structured species of Douglas-fir around the confluence and east fork of Blackberry Creek (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another relatively significant disturbance across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the Blackberry Creek subwatershed windthrow and salvage has occurred across approximately 78 acres.

Current Ownership within the subwatershed is 100% Federal.

Butler Creek (31F)

Butler Creek is approximately 4,334 acres in size. The elevations range from 2,600 feet at Mount Butler to near 1,000 feet along Butler Creek.

Timber harvest has occurred on approximately 1,042 acres within the 4,334 acre subwatershed. Where past harvest had occurred, it tended to occur in close association with other harvest units to form contiguous blocks. In the western part of the subwatershed, in what is now the Grassy Knob Wilderness, is a 360 acre harvest unit cut in 1961. It was harvested prior to its establishment as public lands and subsequent Wilderness designation. Approximately 90 acres of the 360 acre harvest is within this subwatershed. The remaining acres are within the Sixes Watershed. The eastern part of the subwatershed harbors nearly all the timber harvest units in which patch sizes range from one acre to 334 acres (average 106 acres). A large percent of the disturbance occurred during the half-decade of 1960-64, as shown in Figure 8.

Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. A natural fire did occur in the early 1900's in the eastern portion of the watershed (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another relatively significant disturbance across the subwatershed. Within Butler Creek windthrow and salvage has occurred across approximately 76 acres. Generally windthrow occurred in small patches. However, a relatively large patch of 69 acres was salvaged under the Butler Mountain BD sale name.

Current ownership within the subwatershed is 100% Federal.

Panther Creek (31E)

Panther Creek is approximately 5,805 acres in size. The elevations range from 3,000 feet in the headwaters of Panther to near 500 feet at the confluence of Panther and the Elk River.

Timber harvest has occurred on 1,607 acres of the 5,805 acre subwatershed, an additional 64 acres of natural stands were manually released (23 acres) from competing vegetation or commercially thinned (41 acres). Figure 10 includes the 64 acres, along with the 1,607 acres of final removal.

Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fires and windthrow events. A natural fire may have been an agent in producing a younger vegetation type in the vicinity of the middle fork of Panther Creek. Vegetation size, composition, and pattern provide some suspicion that it was perhaps a natural fire fueled by east winds near the turn of the century. Although this is only aerial photo interpretation and not field verified, the time period does correlate with neighboring subwatersheds with a history of a large stand replacing fire(s).

Panther Creek contains 12 harvest units from the 1960's, 1970's and 1980's that are 15 to 35 acres in size. These units are islands of pioneer seral stage structure amidst early, mid to late seral stage structure, fragmenting (at a small scale) the structure of this particular subwatershed. The scale of fragmentation is fairly high as 26% of the 5,805 acre subwatershed has been altered from early, mid, and late seral structure to a pioneer structure size. Fragmentation and increased edges have been created from these harvest activities.

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another relatively significant disturbance across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the Panther Creek subwatershed windthrow and salvage has occurred across approximately 203 acres, primarily during the mid-to-late 1960's. Generally windthrow occurred in small patches. Within this subwatershed salvage of windthrow ranged from two acres to 88 acres in size. The large patch of 88 acres was salvaged under the Victoria Salvage BD sale name.

Current ownership within the subwatershed is 97% National Forest.

Bald Mountain Creek (31D)

Bald Mountain Creek is approximately 6,724 acres in size. The elevations range from 3,000 feet at Rocky Peak to near 200 feet at the mouth of Bald Mountain Creek.

Timber harvest has occurred on approximately 1,087 of the 6,724 acre subwatershed (including Bureau of Land Management) and assuming an additional 1,200 acres of private timber company lands as well. An additional 86 acres were manually released from competing hardwood and brush species in naturally (fire) created stands during 1964 and 1968. Figure 10 includes the 86 acres of this particular type of treatment along with the 1,087 acres of final removal.

Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. Fire has occurred on a very minor scale in relation to other subwatersheds in the Elk River. Records for National Forest land show two fires of relative recent occurrence (1929 - 1995). However, vegetative evidence suggests stand replacing fires along Bald Mountain Ridge and Salal Springs at the headwaters of Bald Mountain Creek (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another disturbance agent across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the Bald Mountain Creek subwatershed windthrow and salvage has not been significant and has occurred across approximately 15 acres in 1963.

Current ownership within the subwatershed is 76% Federal.

Upper Mainstem Elk River (31C)

The Upper Mainstem is approximately 8,795 acres in size. The elevations range from 2,500' at the headwaters (Bungalow Creek) to 500' where Sunshine Creek enters the Elk River.

Timber harvest has occurred on approximately 1,231 of the 8,795 acre subwatershed (see Figure 10).

Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. Fire has occurred on a very minor scale in relation to other subwatersheds in the Elk River. Records for National Forest land show several small fires of relative recent occurrence (1929 - 1995) and a large stand replacing fire occurring at the turn-of-the-century in what is now the Grassy Knob Wilderness (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another disturbance agent across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the Upper Mainstem Subwatershed windthrow and salvage has been relatively significant occurring across approximately 173 acres in 1962, 1963, and 1972.

Current ownership is 100% Federal.

Middle Mainstem Elk River (31B)

The Middle Mainstem is approximately 7,345 acres in size. The elevations range from 2,450' at Anvil Mountain to 400' along the river corridor.

Timber harvest has occurred on approximately 897 of the 7,345 acre subwatershed. An additional 226 acres were manually released from competing hardwood and brush species in naturally (fire) created stands during 1964. Figure 10 includes the 226 acres of this particular type of treatment along with the 897 acres of final removal.

Other disturbances that have lead to the current vegetative makeup have been natural fire and windthrow. These two natural disturbances have not been major disturbance agents in this particular subwatershed. Fire has occurred on a very minor scale in relation to other subwatersheds in the Elk River. Records for National Forest land show several small fires of relative recent occurrence (1929 - 1995) and a large stand replacing fire occurring at the turn-of-the-century in what is now the Grassy Knob Wilderness (see Map 18, Fire Occurrence Map).

Windthrow, and related harvest of windthrow have historically been another disturbance agent across the entire Elk River watershed. Within the Middle Mainstem Subwatershed windthrow and salvage has been relatively significant occurring across approximately 149 acres in 1963, 1964, and 1966.

Current ownership is 95% Federal.

Lower Mainstem Elk River (31A)

The Lower Mainstem is approximately 11,426 acres in size. The elevations range from 900' to sea level where the Elk River enters the Pacific Ocean.

Current ownership is 11% Federal.

TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM - Wildlife Processes

Within the Elk River watershed there are many varied habitats which support an abundance of different wildlife species. The influence of the Pacific Ocean has greatly shaped the vegetation found in the watershed and thus, the mammals, birds, amphibians, and reptiles found there.

The presence or absence of wildlife species in a given area is a direct result of habitat types available. All mammals, birds, reptiles, and amphibians need certain types of ecosystems, and sometimes more than one, during a normal life cycle. Species presence and distribution will change as a result of habitat modifications, natural or human-caused. In maintaining the viability of all resident wildlife species in a watershed, it is critical that a range of habitat conditions are conserved. It is not possible to evaluate an area for its overall wildlife "value" because species' needs are very different and often quite in opposition.

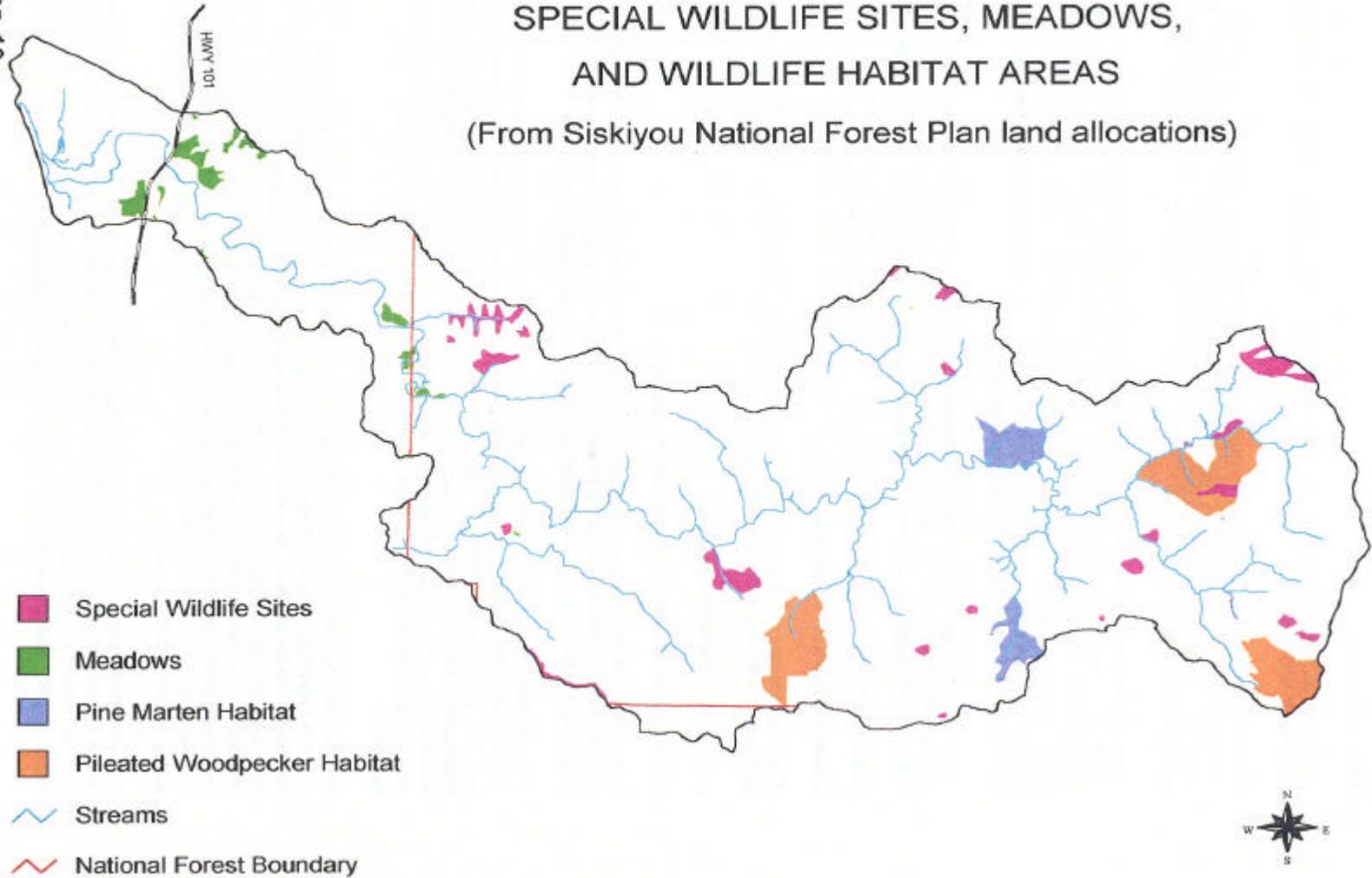
The most obvious and rapidly occurring change in the Elk River has been the replacement of mature coniferous forest ecosystems with early seral habitats. These changes are natural ecological processes and are not always negative. However, within the last century, the frequency at which the communities have changed has had negative effects on some species. Intensive timber harvest in the Elk River watershed has reduced late successional habitat (see Seral Stage maps) and this has had a greater impact on those species dependent on older forests such as northern spotted owls and marbled murrelets. In contrast, however, species such as deer, elk, bluebirds, and bobcats that are more adaptable to early vegetative stages benefit from these changes.

In addition to the predominant habitat type of mature hemlock/Douglas-fir temperate forest, smaller, more unique habitats will affect distribution and breeding success of different species. Sites such as cliffs and scabrock slopes, ponds, meadows and small openings, hardwood stands, and riparian zones provide habitat diversity that allow a variety of species to coexist. These constitute macro scale type habitats.

Map 19

SPECIAL WILDLIFE SITES, MEADOWS, AND WILDLIFE HABITAT AREAS

(From Siskiyou National Forest Plan land allocations)



Additionally, microsite conditions such as amount of snags, downed wood, and patches of hardwoods within meadows, will provide necessary breeding, resting, and foraging sites. One example is that of stands of red alder in riparian zones providing critical nesting habitat for many neotropical migrant bird species.

The behavior of wildlife species is also an important process in terms of where particular animals are found, which sites are more important and which areas receive little use. Seasonal migration patterns are significant and may be altitudinal such as with deer and elk, north-south as with neotropical songbirds, or east-west as with bald eagles and marbled murrelets. Previous human activities in Elk River such as road building and the alteration of forest stands result in direct mortality of some individuals, isolation of others, increased harassment due to improved public access, and displacement and avoidance (Evink et al. 1996).

Wildlife Species

Personal communication with local residents has helped to document past populations of wildlife species in the watershed and can be used as a comparison with present day populations. For a complete list of all wildlife species in the watershed, see Appendix E.

Historically, the Elk River watershed was dominated by western hemlock-Douglas-fir late seral habitats. South facing slopes were interspersed with hardwood stands, primarily tanoak-Port-Orford-cedar and tanoak-western hemlock. Riparian areas were a combination of evergreen trees and hardwoods such as red alder. Special wildlife habitats such as meadows and other openings, ponds and lakes, talus slopes, and cliffs were never abundant in the drainage but did occur (see Map 19, Special Wildlife Habitat). Riparian areas along the Elk River and all the associated tributaries provided abundant riverine habitat. Wildlife diversity, distribution, and abundance has varied since early times as these habitats underwent changes, natural and human caused.

Mammals: Approximately 60 species of mammals are presently found in the watershed (Webb and Shea 1990), including estuarine marine mammals such as harbor seals and sea lions. Carnivore species which were present historically and which are still common include bobcat (*Lynx rufus*), coyote (*Canis latrans*), river otter (*Lutra canadensis*), mink (*Mustela vison*), and raccoon (*Procyon lotor*). There are also many black bears (*Ursus americanus*) (Shea 1995) in the watershed as they utilize the widespread early seral vegetation for feeding. The other large, solitary predator of the watershed is the mountain lion (*Felis concolor*), of which sightings are rare. Likewise, herbivores found historically and presently in good numbers include different squirrel species, mountain beaver (*Aplodontia rufa*), and beaver (*Castor canadensis*). Uncommon or occasional species include seals and sea lions, muskrat (*Ondatra zibethica*), ringtail (*Bassariscus astutus*), which has been observed near human dwellings (Rogers 1996, personal communication), Virginia opossum (*Didelphis marsupialis*), and porcupine (*Erethizon dorsatum*). American martens (*Martes americana*) and gray foxes (*Urocyon cinereoargenteus*) are typically uncommon, however, both have been sighted somewhat regularly in recent years on Iron Mountain. Lynx (*Lynx canadensis*) are not found in the drainage. Sea otters (*Enhydra lutris*) were historically common, however, presently there are none along the entire Oregon coast (Nowak 1991). The Pacific fisher (*Martes pennanti pacifica*) occurs in the watershed but are uncommon. Additional carnivores such as the gray wolf (*Canis lupus*) and grizzly bear (*Ursus horribilis*) were present in historical times but have not been recorded in several decades.

Roosevelt elk (*Cervus canadensis*) have never been abundant in the watershed despite the naming of the area. Accounts from the mid-1800s indicated healthy elk populations in the lower river areas as European settlers began to move along the southern Oregon coast and into the river valleys. Elk were never abundant in the upper drainages. By the late 1800s and early 1900s, however, elk numbers had drastically declined due to the appearance of hide hunters throughout the Elk River and surrounding areas. From 1965 to 1970, elk were transplanted to the Mt. Wells area by the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife (ODFW) from private lands outside of Coos Bay. During 1966-67 eight elk were released in the South Fork of Elk River; 1967-68, 18 elk went to the mainstem; 1970-71, 26 elk went to the area

around Iron Mountain (Toman 1997). From the early 1970s to 1985, elk were regularly observed in small numbers. Fourteen more were released in December 1987 on Milbury Mountain, 12 being fitted with blue visual collars and two with radio collars. These animals quickly moved south to the Gold Beach Ranger District.

There have always been good numbers of black-tailed deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) present in the watershed.

Non-native Mammals: The only exotic mammal known with certainty to be present in the watershed is the Virginia opossum (*Didelphis virginiana*), which is common in the lower river. This mammal is a native of the eastern United States and was introduced into Northwestern Oregon in the 1940s (Maser et al. 1981). The nutria (*Myocastor coypus*) has not yet been observed in Elk River but has made it at least as far south as Lake Tahkenitch (Hopp 1997, personal communication), having been introduced to the Willamette Valley during the mid part of this century. Additionally, it is quite likely that house mice (*Mus musculus*) and black (*Rattus rattus*) and/or Norway rats (*Rattus norvegicus*) inhabit the watershed. These species occur primarily around human dwellings or structures, so would likely be found only in the lower river.

Birds: Approximately 150 bird species reside in the watershed (Webb and Shea 1991). Birds commonly found historically and presently include blue (*Dendragapus obscurus*) and ruffed grouse (*Bonasa umbellus*), California (*Callipepla californica*) and mountain quail (*Oreortyx pictus*), great horned (*Bubo virginianus*), western screech (*Otus kennicottii*), and saw-whet owls (*Aegolius acadicus*), Steller's jay (*Cyanocitta stelleri*), and many other songbird species. Peregrine falcon (*Falco peregrinus*) are not common in the watershed and have not been known to be nesting, but they have been observed. Bald eagles (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*) can generally be seen in the autumn feeding on salmon, however, no nests have been located. Northern spotted owls (*Strix occidentalis caurina*) and marbled murrelets (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*) have been documented in several areas throughout the watershed, including some nesting locations. Given these two species' dependence on late seral coniferous habitat, it is surmised that historical populations were larger. Golden eagles (*Aquila chrysaetos*) are seen occasionally in different parts of the watershed and have nested in the past on Mt. Butler. There are no known nests at present. Barred owls (*Strix varia*) are present but not common. There are unconfirmed sightings of northern goshawk (*Accipiter gentilis*). Black-shouldered kites (*Elanus caeruleus*) are typically found in the lower river and one brown pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis*) was discovered at the mouth of Anvil Creek (Rogers 1996, personal communication). Snowy plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus*) are present along shoreline areas that have open, sandy beach. Given this species' present "Threatened" status, historical populations were higher. Osprey (*Pandion haliaetus*) are regularly seen on the west end of the watershed, flying upriver. At least two pairs in the lower part of the river, west of the National Forest boundary, are established (Rogers 1996, personal communication). Acorn woodpeckers (*Melanerpes formicivorus*) are present in Elk River. Band-tailed pigeon (*Columba fasciata*) populations appear to be decreasing in general (Shea 1996, personal communication), however, sightings of flocks on the west side of Iron Mountain in the last two years have been numerous.

Non-native Birds: Wild turkeys (*Meleagris gallopavo*) have never been released in the watershed by the ODFW, nor are there any documented sightings (Toman 1997, personal communication). There are likely European starlings (*Sturnus vulgaris*), European house sparrows (*Passer domesticus*), and rock doves (*Columba livia*) residing in the areas of human habitation, primarily in the lower river, off National Forest land.

Reptiles and Amphibians: Historical reptile and amphibian populations are assumed similar to the present, though there is a lack of information for many species. There are the usual garter snakes and lizards as well as different frog species and terrestrial and aquatic salamanders. Bullfrogs (*Rana catesbeiana*), the only possible exotic species, have not been observed in the watershed.

Proposed, Endangered, Threatened, Sensitive (PETS), and Rare Species

The following table illustrates the status of the proposed, endangered, threatened, sensitive (PETS), and rare species that exist in the Elk River watershed.

Figure 13: Status of Elk River PETS and Rare Species

Species	ESA Federal Listing ***	Oregon State Listing****	USDA Region 6 Sensitive	Survey & Manage Component 2**
Peregrine Falcon	Endangered (1970)	Endangered		
Bald Eagle	Threatened (1978)	Threatened		
Northern Spotted Owl	Threatened (1990)	Threatened		
Marbled Murrelet	Threatened (1992)	Sensitive		
Western Snowy Plover	Threatened (1993)	Threatened		
Pacific Western Big-Eared Bat	Species of Concern*	Sensitive	Sensitive	
White-Footed Vole	Species of Concern	Sensitive	Sensitive	
Northwestern Pond Turtle	Species of Concern	Sensitive	Sensitive	
Northern red-legged Frog	Species of Concern	Sensitive		
American marten		Sensitive		
Pacific Fisher	Species of Concern	Sensitive		
Northern Goshawk	Species of Concern	Sensitive		
Del Norte Salamander	Species of Concern	Sensitive		Component 2
Red Tree Vole				Component 2
Foothill yellow-legged Frog	Species of Concern	Sensitive		
Southern Torrent Salamander	Species of Concern			
Tailed Frog	Species of Concern	Sensitive		
Burnell's False Water Penny Beetle	Species of Concern		Sensitive	
Newcomb's Littorine Snail	Species of Concern			
California Floater (mussel)	Species of Concern			

* Species of Concern: Taxa whose conservation status is of concern to the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service (many previously known as Category 2 candidates), but for which further information is still needed.

** Component 2: Need to survey prior to ground disturbing activities and manage known sites (FEMAT 1993).

*** Updated List, September 1997

**** List from January 1996

Threatened and Endangered Species

American Peregrine Falcon (*Falco peregrinus anatum*): The American peregrine falcon was federally listed as an endangered species in 1970 under the Endangered Species Act, due to population declines caused primarily from the fatal effects of chemical poisoning (DDT). A recovery plan was approved for the Pacific States in 1982 by the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, which designates management units that have individual objectives that must be met in all areas before the species may be reclassified to threatened status. The Elk River is a part of a management unit (see Appendix F) which requires there to be a minimum of 10 nesting pairs producing an average of 1.5 young/year over a five-year period. Recovery Plan objectives for peregrine falcon are outlined in Appendix F. At present, at least 10 nesting pairs have been documented in the recovery zone. These birds have not, however, met the production objectives (currently the average is .9 young/nest/year), and egg shell thinning continues to be higher than in other zones (Pagel 1998, personal communication). Contaminants may be continuing to cause low production, though that has not been proven. The peregrine falcon is also state-listed as endangered.

Peregrine falcons are addressed in the Siskiyou Land and Resource Management Plan (1989) on page IV-29. Specifically, the objectives include that "sufficient existing nesting and feeding habitat shall be protected to meet the objectives of the Pacific Coast Recovery Plan", and that "all existing nest sites and any new nests shall be protected, and feeding areas may be enhanced."

From 1989 to 1991 habitat managed by the Coos Bay District of the Bureau of Land Management, Siskiyou National Forest, and private land in Southwest Oregon was surveyed to document presence and/or potential occupation by breeding peregrine falcons (Pagel 1991). Many cliffs (>70) were aerial and ground surveyed for falcon presence and overall habitat suitability. No sites within the Elk River watershed were surveyed, however, 3 miles to the west of the southern boundary is Humbug Mountain. This site is rated as having medium to high potential as habitat for peregrines. It was surveyed in 1989, 1990, and 1991 with negative results. The Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife (ODFW) conducted aerial surveys in 1982 and 1987 (Collins 1982 and 1987) and again, many cliffs were examined in Southwest Oregon, however, none in the Elk River watershed.

One peregrine falcon observation record exists for the Elk River watershed. They are rarely seen inland, but are frequently observed on the coast during the winter months (Rogers 1996, personal communication).

Peregrine falcon require cliffs > 30 meters in height and near forested habitat, cliff complexes within 400 to 1,000 meters of perennial or ephemeral water, nest ledges inaccessible to predators, an avian prey base, and little or no human disturbance (Pagel 1995). Such habitat exists along the main Elk River road and further north into the interior of Grassy Knob Wilderness. Disturbance may be too high along Elk River due to vehicle traffic, however, a complete survey for peregrine falcon has not been done in the watershed.

Bald Eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*): In February 1978, the bald eagle was federally listed as an endangered species in all of the continental United States except Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, Oregon, and Washington, where it was classified as threatened. This listing came due to declining populations caused from the fatal effects of chemical poisoning, poaching of birds, and loss of habitat. The Pacific Bald Eagle Recovery Plan was completed in 1986 by the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service for a 7-state Pacific Recovery Area, which includes Idaho, Nevada, California, Oregon, Washington, Montana, and Wyoming. The recovery plan outlines the steps needed for recovery and maintenance of bald eagle populations (see Appendix G). The eagle is also state-listed as threatened.

The Elk River watershed is a part of Zone 23, the California/Oregon Coast area of the plan, which includes Southwest Oregon east to the Rogue Valley and the northern California coast south to San Francisco (see Appendix H, shows zone for Oregon only). The nearest key area to Elk River designated in the plan is the Sixes watershed to the north. A "key area" is defined in the Recovery Plan as an "area that contains important habitat for eagles" (page 28). The Elk River is not a key area, however, it is listed in the Working Implementation Plan for Bald Eagle Recovery in Oregon and Washington (1990) as a "Potential Territory" for one pair .

Bald eagles are addressed in the Siskiyou Land and Resource Management Plan (1989). The Forest Standards and Guidelines (page IV-28) apply in the event a nest site is found. They include:

- Bald eagle nest sites shall be protected, including existing active and inactive nest sites, and designated recovery (potential) sites. Primary and secondary zones should be established by actual use observations and site-specific information.
- Regularly used feeding and roost sites (including wintering habitat) shall be protected.

There are three documented bald eagle sightings for the Elk River. In May 1997, the District conducted an aerial survey of the Elk River corridor. No birds or nests were observed at that time, however, later in the month, Jim Heaney of the Coos Bay BLM office did find an active nest in the Coquille drainage (Heaney 1997, personal communication), approximately 12 air miles to the northeast of the main Elk River. The Elk River is large enough to support nesting bald eagles in terms of available prey base and suitable nest trees. A detailed survey of the river corridor is critical.

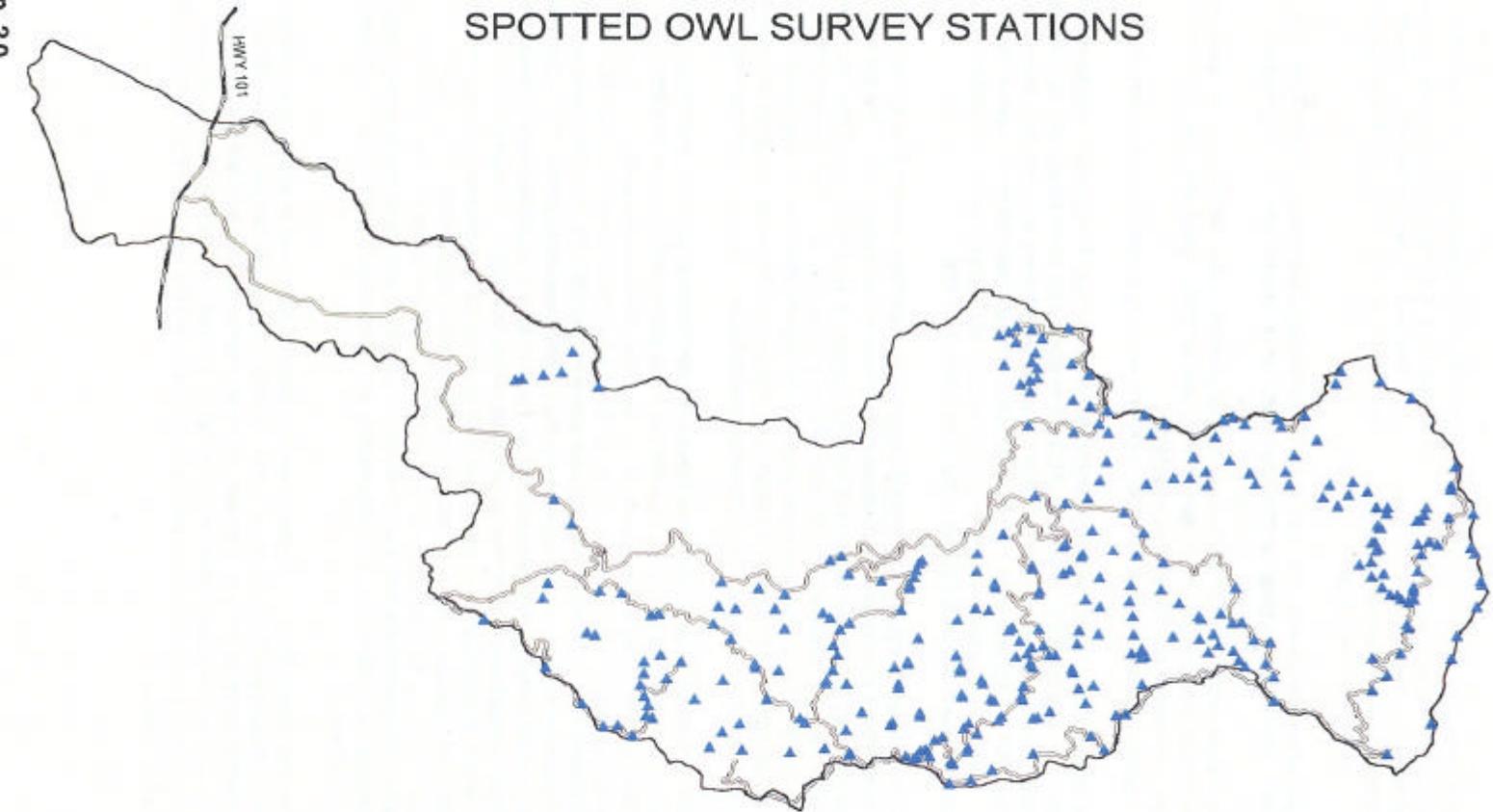
Northern Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*): In June 1990, the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service listed the northern spotted owl as a threatened subspecies throughout its range. The owl's population decline is a result of loss of breeding and dispersal habitat. In April 1994, the FEIS on Management of Habitat for Late-Successional and Old-Growth Forest Related Species Within the Range of the Northern Spotted Owl (NFP) was completed as an amendment to Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management planning documents. This effort designated Late-Successional Reserves, designed over time, to sustain old-growth dependent species. The northern spotted owl is also state-listed as threatened.

Surveys for northern spotted owls on the Powers Ranger District began in the mid-1970s. Prior to 1990, all surveys were conducted by Forest Service personnel and primarily focused on planned project areas (almost exclusively timber sales). Beginning in 1991, the Siskiyou National Forest began contracting these surveys, again in project areas. In the Elk River watershed, surveys have been done since 1974. Approximately 50% of the watershed has been surveyed (see Map 20). With the implementation of the NFP, there have not been any surveys done in the Elk River watershed since 1993 (except for surveys at specific activity centers). Approximately 89% of Federal lands in the watershed is protected as Late-Successional Reserve or Wilderness (or other categories, see Map 3). Approximately 11% is designated Matrix where "most timber harvest and other silvicultural activities would be conducted in that portion of the Matrix with suitable forest lands, according to standards and guidelines" (ROD, page C-39). The few projects in LSR (eg. potential thinnings) and projects in Matrix lands are surveyed for northern spotted owl, and in the event that a nest, pair, or resident single bird is discovered, the Siskiyou Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines would be implemented, which include a 300-foot buffer zone around the nest tree or roost site.

The information from the surveys was reviewed in March 1996 and areas where pairs or territorial single owls were located were designated as " northern spotted owl activity centers." The Elk River watershed has six activity centers, three of which were most recently surveyed in April and May 1997. Northern spotted owls were heard at night at two of the sights but could not be located during the daytime follow-ups. The third activity center had no responses during the night. A history of the six centers is displayed in Figure 14.

Map 20

SPOTTED OWL SURVEY STATIONS



- ▲ Owl Survey Stations
- Main Roads



Figure 14: Elk River Northern Spotted Owl Activity Centers

	Activity Center					
	76	140	155	267	349	353
Land Designation	Wilderness	LSR	LSR	LSR	LSR	LSR
Suitable Habitat	<30%	>40%	>40%	30-40%	>40%	<30%
1974	Pair					
1975	Single					
1976	Pair/Nest tree					
1979	Single					
1981	Pair					
1983	Single					
1986	No response					
1987		Single				
1988	Pair		Single			
1989	Pair with two young		Single			
1990		Single	Single	Single		
1991	Single					
1992		Single		Pair	Pair/Nest Tree	Single
1993				Single	Single	
1995		Single				
1997	Single	No Response			Single	

Blank spaces indicate years with no survey data.

“Suitable” and “Dispersal” Habitat for Northern Spotted Owls

Suitable northern spotted owl habitat in the Elk River consists of those stands with old-growth forest structural components. Owls consistently concentrate foraging and roosting activities in old-growth or mixed-age stands of mature and old-growth trees (ISC Report, 1990). Nest sites are primarily old-growth trees in old-growth stands or in remnant old-growth patches. The two historical nest trees in Elk River are both broken top, Douglas-fir trees, 48” and 51” dbh, 100’ and 85’ tall, respectively. Both nests were at the top of the trees and one had several branches protecting the cavity.

Dispersal northern spotted owl habitat needs to be distributed across the landscape between designated areas managed primarily for northern spotted owl habitat (Hutchins 1992). Thomas, et al. described necessary dispersal habitat conditions in the 1990 Report on A Conservation Strategy for the Northern Spotted Owl (ISC Report). Their recommendations became known as the “50-11-40 rule”: 50% of the landbase in a regulated forest would have stands of timber with 40% canopy closure and trees of 11 inch average dbh (ISC Report 1990).

Information on northern spotted owls, marbled murrelets, and suitable and dispersal habitat is displayed in Figure 15. “Suitable” and “dispersal” habitat acres were determined by early, mid, and late seral acreages, as shown in the table. A map of the distribution of habitats can be seen on the current seral stage map (Map 11).

Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*): The Washington, Oregon and California populations of the marbled murrelet were federally listed as threatened in September 1992. Population declines are the result of loss of breeding habitat and threats from potential oil spills and gill netting practices. In July 1995, the Draft Marbled Murrelet Recovery Plan was completed by the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. The Final is expected to be done in October 1997 (Miller 1997, personal communication). It is also state-listed as sensitive in Oregon.

All of the Elk River watershed is within Zone 1 (within 35 miles of the Pacific Ocean) of the bird's range, which requires two years of surveys to be completed for any proposed project that would remove murrelet habitat.

Surveys for the marbled murrelet began in the watershed in 1989, when Oregon State University did "general" surveys throughout the District. A general survey consisted of a transect method that is designed to determine the geographic distribution over large areas (e.g., state, county, watershed). General surveys cannot be used to establish that murrelets are absent from a stand and are not recommended for use with specific projects (Ralph et al. 1993). For this reason, "intensive" surveys were begun in 1991, which focused on one station per morning of survey. These surveys provide information such as presence, probable absence, or occupancy of a specific stand; murrelet activity levels at specific stands; and murrelet use patterns. From 1990-1992, the District did the murrelet survey work with Forest Service personnel trained in marbled murrelet survey techniques, or certified. In 1993, contracting with certified private individuals and companies was begun. Approximately 30% of National Forest land in the watershed has been surveyed (see Map 21).

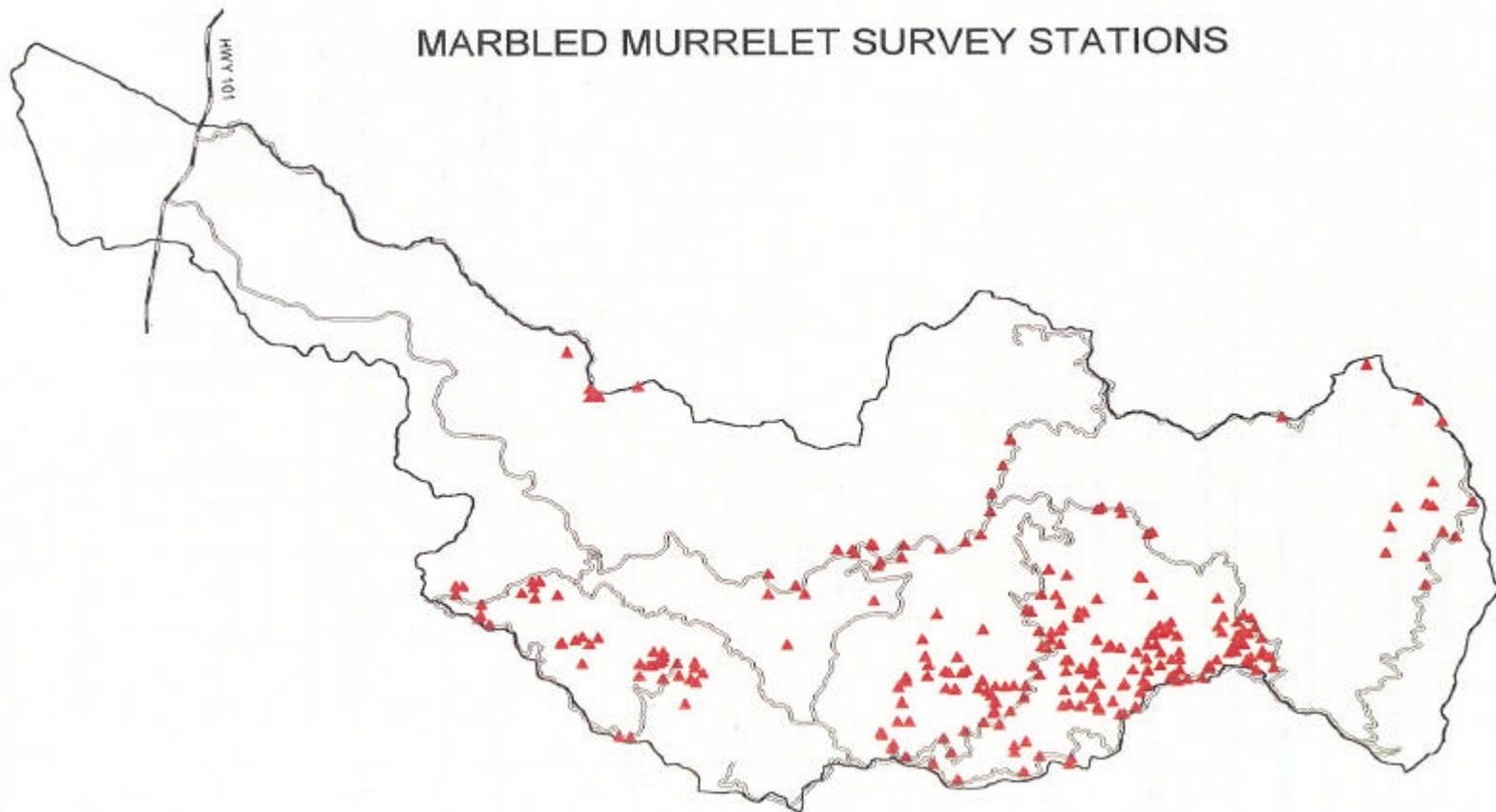
The early general surveys indicated high activity levels of birds flying in the main river corridor. Two transects located along Elk River road showed that daily, during the breeding season, many birds were using the river as a travel corridor. With more specific, intensive surveys in recent years, occupied behavior has been observed at several locations, both along the main river and tributaries. The Elk River watershed also has the only two known marbled murrelet nests on the Forest.

Occupied murrelet locations in the Elk River Matrix will be designated as protected habitat with "all contiguous existing and recruitment habitat for marbled murrelets (i.e., stands that are capable of becoming marbled murrelet habitat within 25 years) within a 0.5-mile radius being protected" (ROD, pg. C-10). At present, there are three occupied sites that fall partially or completely within Matrix. Suitable habitat and habitat that will become suitable within 25 years will be protected within a .5 mile radius either around the behavior indicating occupation, or within .5 mile of the location of the behavior, whichever maximizes interior old-growth habitat (ROD, page C-10).

MARBLED MURRELET SURVEY STATIONS

Map 21

Elk River - 59



- ▲ Murrelet Survey Stations
- ~ Main Roads

Note- map shows sites used through 1996



Figure 15: Status of Northern Spotted Owls, Murrelets, and their Habitats within the Watershed.

	Total Acreage/Sites	Total Protected (% of Total)		Total Unprotected (% of Total)	
		# Acres	%	# Acres	%
Total Acreage within the Watershed	58,388	40,384	69	17,954	31
Total Forest-capable Acreage within the Watershed	54,402	40,280	74	14,122	26
Forest-Capable Acreage in Federal Ownership within the watershed*	45,073	40,280	89	4,793	11
Total Suitable northern spotted Owl Habitat (NRF) (Late seral)	13,157	11,843	90	1,314	10
Total northern spotted Owl Dispersal Habitat (Early and mid seral)	26,838	24,246	90	2,592	10
Total northern spotted owl sites	6	6	100	-	-
Northern spotted owl sites (>40%)	3	3	100	-	-
Northern spotted owl sites (30-40%)	1	1	100	-	-
Northern spotted owl sites (<30%)	2	2	100	-	-
Total murrelet suitable habitat (late and mid seral, 80-200 yrs)	30,466	27,150	89	3,316	11
Total murrelet suitable habitat (late seral, old-growth, >200 yrs)	13,157	11,843	90	1,314	10
Total number of murrelet detections	65	36	55	29	45
Total occupied murrelet sites	12	9	75	3	25

Table Definitions:

Total acreage within the watershed boundary, including all ownerships (ie. all Federal, state and private lands).

Forest-capable acres are those acres capable of producing forested habitat

Acreage of Federal Ownership: Acres capable of producing forested habitat on Federal lands.

*All information in this row and below refer only to National Forest lands. BLM lands total 766 acres, all in Matrix.

Protected Acreage: Acres in LSR's and congressionally and administratively withdrawn lands.

Unprotected Acreage: Acres in Matrix lands.

Total Suitable Northern Spotted Owl Habitat: Total nesting, roosting, and foraging habitat (NRF). Defined as late seral habitats.

Total Northern Spotted Owl Dispersal Habitat. Defined as early and mid seral habitats.

Total Northern Spotted Owl Sites: Total pair and territorial single northern spotted owl activity centers.

Northern Spotted Owl Sites >40%: Northern Spotted owl activity areas (1/5 mile radius circles) containing greater than 40% mature conifer forest (mature =>18" dbh)

Northern Spotted Owl Sites 30-40%: Northern Spotted owl activity areas containing between 30 and 40 percent mature conifer forest.

Northern Spotted Owl Sites <30%: Northern Spotted owl activity areas with less than 30% mature conifer forest.

Total Marbled Murrelet Suitable Habitat. Defined as late and mid seral habitats.

Total Marbled Murrelet Suitable Habitat. Defined as late seral habitats.

Total Marbled Murrelet Detections: as defined by Pacific Seabird Group protocol surveys - including all auditory and visual detections (number of detections including occupied behaviors).

Total occupied Marbled Murrelet Sites: as defined by Pacific Seabird Group protocol surveys - circling, diving and subcanopy behaviors.

“Critical Habitat” for Northern Spotted Owls and Marbled Murrelets

In January 1992, the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service determined what lands within the range of the northern spotted owl comprise critical habitat, defined as “the specific areas within the geographic area occupied by the owl on which are found physical and biological features essential to the conservation of the species, and that may require special management considerations or protection; and, specific areas outside the geographic area occupied by the owl, when it is determined that such areas are essential for the conservation of the species” (Federal Register 1992). In May 1996, the final critical habitat for marbled murrelet was issued. See Critical Habitat Map (Map 22) for designated land in the Elk River watershed. Additionally, critical habitat has been proposed for the western snowy plover (1995), however none presently exists in the Elk River watershed (Phillips 1997, personal communication).

Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*): Concern for western snowy plover among Oregon State wildlife agencies began in the early 1970s. In 1975, the Oregon Fish and Wildlife Commission listed the plover as threatened, status which was reaffirmed under the Oregon Endangered Species Act in 1989. The coastal population of the western snowy plover was listed as threatened by the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service in March, 1993. Population declines are attributed to the loss and disturbance of nesting sites throughout the range of the coastal population, the establishment of European beachgrass, human development and disturbance, and nest predation. The Draft Recovery plan is expected spring 1998 (Pratt 1997, personal communication). The snowy plover is also state-listed as threatened.

The southern Oregon coast has several areas designated as suitable snowy plover habitat, which include tracts of open, sandy beach. The Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife conducts annual breeding counts for plovers and in 1995 began a transect from Port Orford to Elk River. There were no birds observed in 1995 or 1996, nor along a transect done from Cape Blanco to Elk River in spring 1997.

The breeding population of plovers along the Oregon coast has shown a 7 percent per annum decline between 1981-1992 (ODFW 1994). The stretch of beach within the Elk River watershed contains excellent potential habitat, particularly since the winter storms of 1996/1997 washed out large amounts of vegetation (Van Dyke 1997, personal communication). Additionally, a scarcity of insect life has been observed in the past and may contribute to lack of plovers.

Sensitive Species

The Regional Forester's list of sensitive species includes the following for the Elk River watershed:

Pacific western big-eared bat (*Plecotus townsendii townsendii*)
White-footed vole (*Arborimus albipes*)
Northwestern pond turtle (*Clemmys marmorata marmorata*)

Additionally, these three plus the northern red-legged frog (*Rana aurora aurora*) are listed as species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and are on the State Sensitive List.

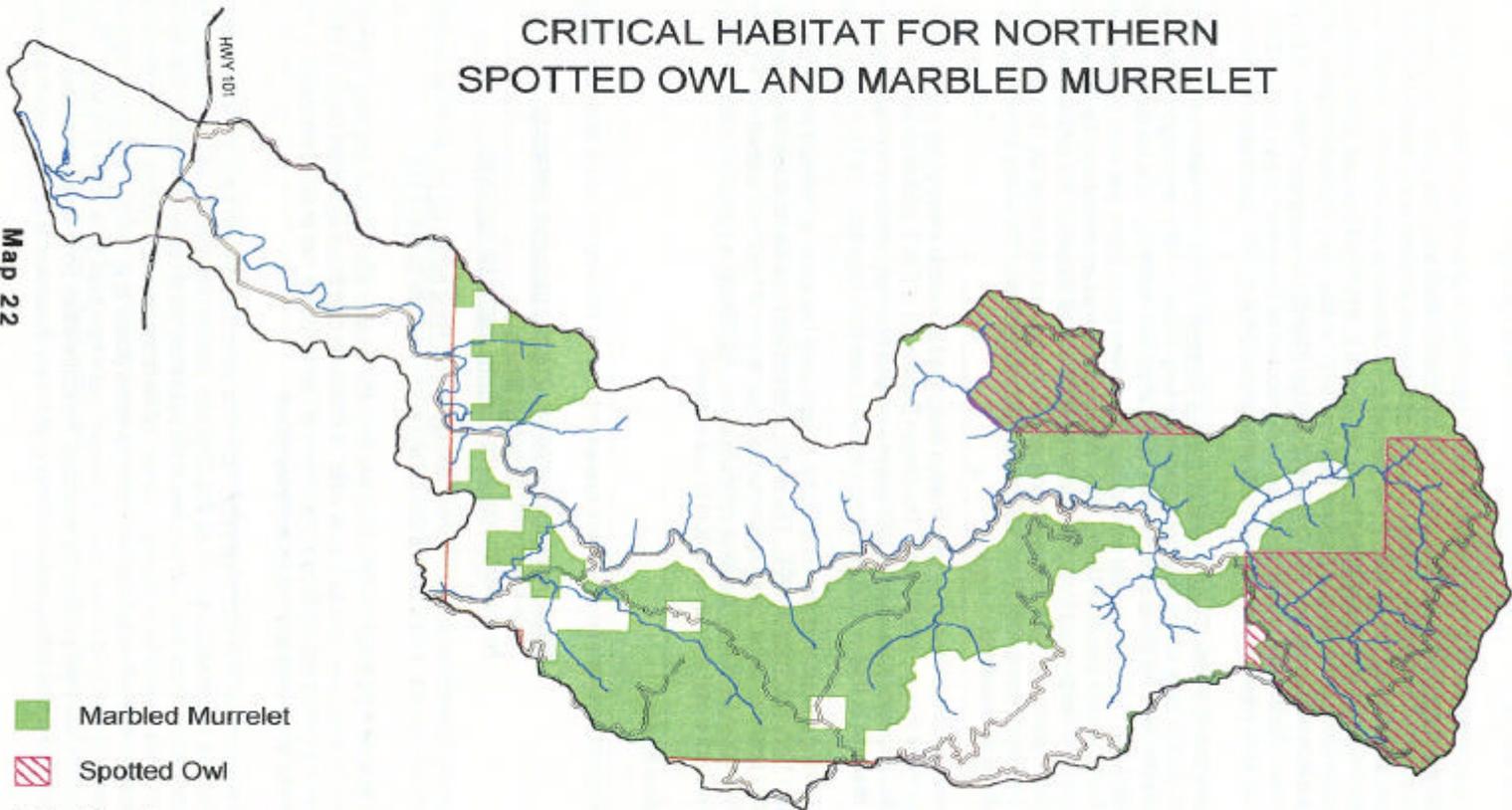
These species are surveyed for presence and probable absence during project planning. Formal surveys have not been done for bats or voles. A Challenge Cost Share agreement begun in 1995, between the District and the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife, has provided the means to complete surveys for amphibians and reptiles in the watershed.

There are currently no District observation records for either the big-eared bat or the white-footed vole. The bats use human structures, caves, and deep rock crevices (Maser et al. 1981) for breeding, roosting, and hibernating. There are no large caves in the watershed, but structures in the lower river and rock crevices in the upper provide abundant habitat. White-footed voles are typically found in riparian alder stands within approximately 15 air miles from the ocean (Maser et al. 1981). Pitfall survey traps are the best method presently to survey for voles, however, none have been done in the watershed. Though there are few lakes and ponds in the watershed, the Northwestern pond turtle also inhabits moderately deep

ponds and slow moving portions of creeks and rivers (Nussbaum et al. 1983), which are abundant. Map 22

CRITICAL HABITAT FOR NORTHERN SPOTTED OWL AND MARBLED MURRELET

Map 22



-  Marbled Murrelet
-  Spotted Owl
-  Roads
-  Streams
-  USFS Forest Boundary



Pond turtles have not been reported previously in Elk River, however, three individuals were released into one of the smaller ponds in the watershed in October, 1995, one of which was observed again in March, 1996. Red-legged frogs inhabit moist forest and valley riparian habitats along pond edges and slow-moving water, and during the non-breeding season may occur up to 1,000 feet from water in moist woods (Nussbaum et al. 1983). Three ponds in the watershed contain red-legged frog individuals.

Management Indicator Species (MIS)

The 1989 Siskiyou Land and Resource Management Plan considers certain groups of species that have special habitat needs. These groups include: 1) species dependent on specialized habitat conditions, such as cavity nesters; 2) species requiring early, mature, or old-growth forest conditions for optimum habitat; 3) popular game species; and 4) Endangered, Threatened, and Sensitive species (FEIS, pg. III-101). The Forest has selected eight wildlife species to be management indicator species for these groups.

The **bald eagle** and **northern spotted owl** were selected to represent the needs of species that use 1) habitat corridors along major rivers and 2) old-growth forest, respectively. The **osprey** was selected as a species that uses habitat corridors along large creeks and rivers. In the Elk River watershed there are no known nests on National Forest land, however, at least two pairs are established on the lower river. The **pileated woodpecker** (*Dryocopus pileatus*) (state sensitive) represents the needs of cavity nesters in mature forest. No formal surveys have been done for pileateds in the watershed, however, they appear to exist in good numbers (Howell, personal observation). The **American marten** represents the needs of secretive species, such as smaller forest carnivores, that use mature forest. No remote camera surveys have been done yet in the Elk River watershed for this group of species. **Woodpeckers** represent all wildlife species which use cavities for nesting or denning. Specifically, the five woodpeckers represented are the downy (*Picoides pubescens*), hairy (*Picoides villosus*), pileated, red-breasted sapsucker (*Sphyrapicus ruber*), and Northern flicker (*Colaptes auratus*). Again, no specific surveys for these birds have been done, but they presumably exist in good numbers. Last, the **black-tailed deer** and **Roosevelt elk** represent species that use early successional forest stages as well as those species commonly hunted. Elk have been censused aerially in previous years and are not abundant in the watershed. Black-tailed deer are very abundant.

Additional Species of Interest and Concern

Small Forest Carnivores: One of the most sensitive measurements of the integrity of natural ecosystems is the health of the carnivores of an area. Carnivores, such as the wolf, grizzly bear, and mountain lion have been studied extensively in the past. The smaller forest carnivores such as the American marten, fisher, lynx, and wolverine (*Gulo gulo*) have not been studied much and during this century the populations have shrunk considerably across their ranges. Habitat loss, residential development, increased back country roading, trapping pressure, and sensitivity to humans have all contributed to the decline (Zielinski and Kucera 1995).

Several petitions have been submitted in recent years to the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service to list three of these four (fisher, lynx, and wolverine) as threatened or endangered under the Endangered Species Act. All have been denied. Different state and federal agencies have designated the four as management indicators, sensitive, and species of special concern. In Oregon, at present, the wolverine is the only one listed under the Regional Forester's sensitive species list, and also is on the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife's state threatened & endangered list as threatened. In Oregon, the lynx is considered extirpated and is designated as a furbearer with a closed season. Neither lynx nor wolverine are considered residents of the Elk River presently though interviews with local people and previous Forest Service employees indicate that, at least historically, lynx were present in some areas on Galice District and Powers (Ford 1993, personal communication and Hofsess 1996, personal communication). The Pacific fisher is a species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. The American marten and Pacific fisher are listed in Oregon on the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife's sensitive species list and interestingly, they are also listed in the Oregon Furbearer Trapping and Hunting Regulations (July 1, 1996-June 30, 1998).

The fisher has a closed season the entire year and the marten may be trapped west of highway 97 from November 1 through January 31. Furtakers are requested to submit date, location, sex, and carcass to the local Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife office before March 1. This information is considered critical to successful future management of American marten.

Of the species proposed for listing, the Pacific fisher is the only one potentially residing in the watershed. In December, 1994, a petition was submitted to the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service to list two fisher populations in the western United States as threatened. The petition came from the Director for the Biodiversity Legal Foundation, Boulder, Colorado. The explanation in the Federal Register for the service's negative finding is "...the Service finds that the petition does not present substantial information indicating that the fishers in the Pacific Coast and Rocky Mountain areas of the of the western United States are distinct vertebrate population segments listable under the Act" (Federal Register 1996). Additionally, however, the Service also states that "because available information indicates fishers have experienced declines in the past, and may be vulnerable to the removal and fragmentation of mature/old-growth habitat and incidental trapping pressure, the Service will continue to treat the entire fisher species as a species of concern." The background information of the finding states that little is known on fisher status in Oregon, though in 1994, fishers were documented on the west side of the Cascades in the southern part of the state.

Both fisher and marten inhabit mature coniferous forest and have been sighted in the Elk River watershed, specifically, a sighting for fisher is recorded for the Blackberry Creek subwatershed (unverified). In the past, it has been extremely difficult to survey for these species due to their secretive nature, their tendency to leave little visible sign of their presence, being nocturnal and naturally very shy of humans, and occurring at low densities. In recent years, however, with the use of remote camera stations, track plate devices, and snow tracking, it is possible to collect data on presence and probable absence for a specific area.

Powers has been doing camera surveys since 1991, however, none have been done in the Elk River watershed. This has largely been due to long travel distances. Sightings and habitat in Elk River, however, are indicators of a need for such surveys.

Northern Goshawk: The Northern Goshawk (*Accipiter gentilis*), the largest accipiter in North America, has become a species of concern since the early 1990s. It is listed as a species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and in Oregon, and as a management indicator species on some National Forests, though not on the Siskiyou. The U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service announced in September 1997 that it will review the status of the northern goshawk and a decision will come in one year. The status review will cover the range of the species. The primary reason for concern is loss of the goshawk's preferred breeding habitat, old-growth forest, as well as the loss of open understory for foraging. Fire exclusion may be partially responsible for the lack of an open understory and although planned harvests could potentially provide these forage areas, they grow over too quickly in the Elk River to provide any long term utility (Stravers and Barna, personal communication).

Northern goshawk surveys were begun at Powers in 1996. Transect and scan surveys were completed in some areas of the Elk River watershed during the breeding seasons of 1996 and 1997. No goshawks were detected during either year, however, historical, though unconfirmed, sightings have been documented. The Elk River appears to have little suitable foraging habitat for goshawks. From the 1997 survey report, resurveying the South Fork of Bald Mt. Creek and Bald Mt. Meadows was recommended. The surveyors deemed the South Fork to have "the most suitable habitat in the Elk River" (Stravers and Barna 1997). Additionally, more historical information is needed on goshawk occurrence in previous decades.

Survey and Manage Species

A species viability analysis completed in the document, Forest Ecosystem Management: An Ecological, Economic, and Social Assessment (1993) identified approximately 400 species that had unsatisfactory viability ratings. That is to say, over the next 100 years, it is unlikely that these species, which includes birds, mammals, lichens, mollusks, bryophytes, vascular plants, and amphibians, will be able to continually

persist well distributed throughout their range on Federal lands with the range of the northern spotted owl (FEMAT, pg. IV-40). The goal of management is to have satisfactory viability ratings for all species, thus approximately 30 mitigation measures were developed to mitigate.

One measure included the formation of a "survey and manage" list of species that are to be protected through survey and management standards and guidelines (ROD, pg. C-49). Many fungi, lichens, bryophytes, mollusks, vascular plants, and arthropods are included on this list, for which very little work has been done. Additionally, for the Powers Ranger District, Del Norte salamander (Plethodon elongatus) and red tree vole (Arborimus longicaudus) are listed.

Del Norte salamander: The Del Norte salamander is a survey and manage component 2 species, state listed as sensitive, and a species of concern with U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. It is a relatively rare, endemic species with a very restricted range. The Del Norte is strongly associated with late-successional forest, interior forest microhabitat and microclimate conditions, and talus substrates (Olson 1996).

Surveys conducted for Del Norte salamander during 1995 in the Elk River documented no individuals, however, during March 1996 one adult was found. At this site, a buffer of one site-potential tree (or 100-foot horizontal distance, whichever is greater, surrounding the location) is retained (ROD, pg. C-28). The location of this Del Norte observation is within a Riparian Reserve and is not mapped separately. Conservative measures are recommended when dealing with this type of rare endemic vertebrate species (Olson 1996).

Additionally, just south of the Elk River watershed, Del Norters have been located in the North Fork Lobster Creek drainage and Euchre Creek on the Gold Beach Ranger District. For this reason, Elk River is an area in which to focus future surveys. Specific areas include slopes with moist, talus substrates.

Red tree vole: The only designation for red tree vole presently is that of a survey and manage species. The red tree vole is an arboreal species which may spend its entire life in trees, moving from one to another through the canopy (Carey 1991). They are most commonly found in Douglas-fir stands of all seral stages, though tend to be significantly more abundant in mature and old-growth forests (Corn and Bury 1986). The voles build conspicuous nests usually in Douglas-fir trees wherever there is a suitable foundation and readily accessible food supply (Carey 1991).

Red tree vole surveys have not been done in the Elk River watershed. In November 1996, interim guidance for red tree vole stated that habitat would be analyzed at the landscape level to ensure habitat availability through the year 2000, and to determine opportunities to maintain populations which can utilize that habitat and be able to disperse to Late-Successional Reserves or other suitable habitats nearby. Fifth field watersheds with > 10% Federal lands were evaluated for the following conditions: a minimum of 40% of the Federal land is forested and 1) has approximately 60% crown closure or greater, and 2) has an average conifer tree DBH of approximately 10 inches or greater, and 3) this closure and diameter can be maintained through the end of the year 2000. In the Elk River watershed, all 5th field watersheds have above 40% suitable habitat. Thus, surveys are not required before implementation of project activities, though should be conducted whenever possible. When one or more populations (a population is defined as "two or more active nest trees spaced no more than 100 m-330' apart) are documented, certain management strategies should be considered (see Management Recommendations section).

Foothill yellow-legged frog (Rana boylei): The foothill yellow-legged frog is a species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and is listed as state sensitive. This frog is closely confined to the vicinity of permanent streams and is most common in a near streams with rocky, gravelly, or sandy bottoms (Leonard et al. 1993). There are documented sightings of foothill yellow-legged frog in the Elk River mainstem and some tributaries. Details of this species' life history and ecology are not well known for Oregon populations. Once considered abundant in southwestern Oregon, there is evidence that some populations are greatly reduced (Leonard et al. 1993).

Southern torrent salamander (Rhyacotriton variegatus): The southern torrent salamander is a species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. This salamander inhabits cold, clear streams and is often found in the “splash zone”, where a thin film of water runs between or under rocks (Leonard et al. 1993). There are two sightings for this species in Elk River, one along the mainstem and one along a tributary.

Tailed Frog (Ascaphus truei): The tailed frog is a species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and on the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife sensitive species list. The tailed frog is a stream dweller and does not inhabit ponds or lakes (Leonard et al. 1993). There are no documented sightings for tailed frog in the Elk River watershed. Research on tailed frog in other areas has shown that the species may be severely reduced or eliminated in some locations as a result of timber harvest and road building. Sedimentation of streams and increased stream temperatures are likely causes (Leonard et al. 1993).

Invertebrates: The following invertebrates are all listed as species of concern with the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service and the penny beetle is also on the Regional Forester’s sensitive species list. Very little is known about any of these and there have not been any surveys done for them in the Elk River watershed.

Burnell’s false water penny beetle (Acneus burnelli)
Newcomb’s littorine snail (Algamorda newcombiana)
California floater (mussel) (Anodonta californiensis)

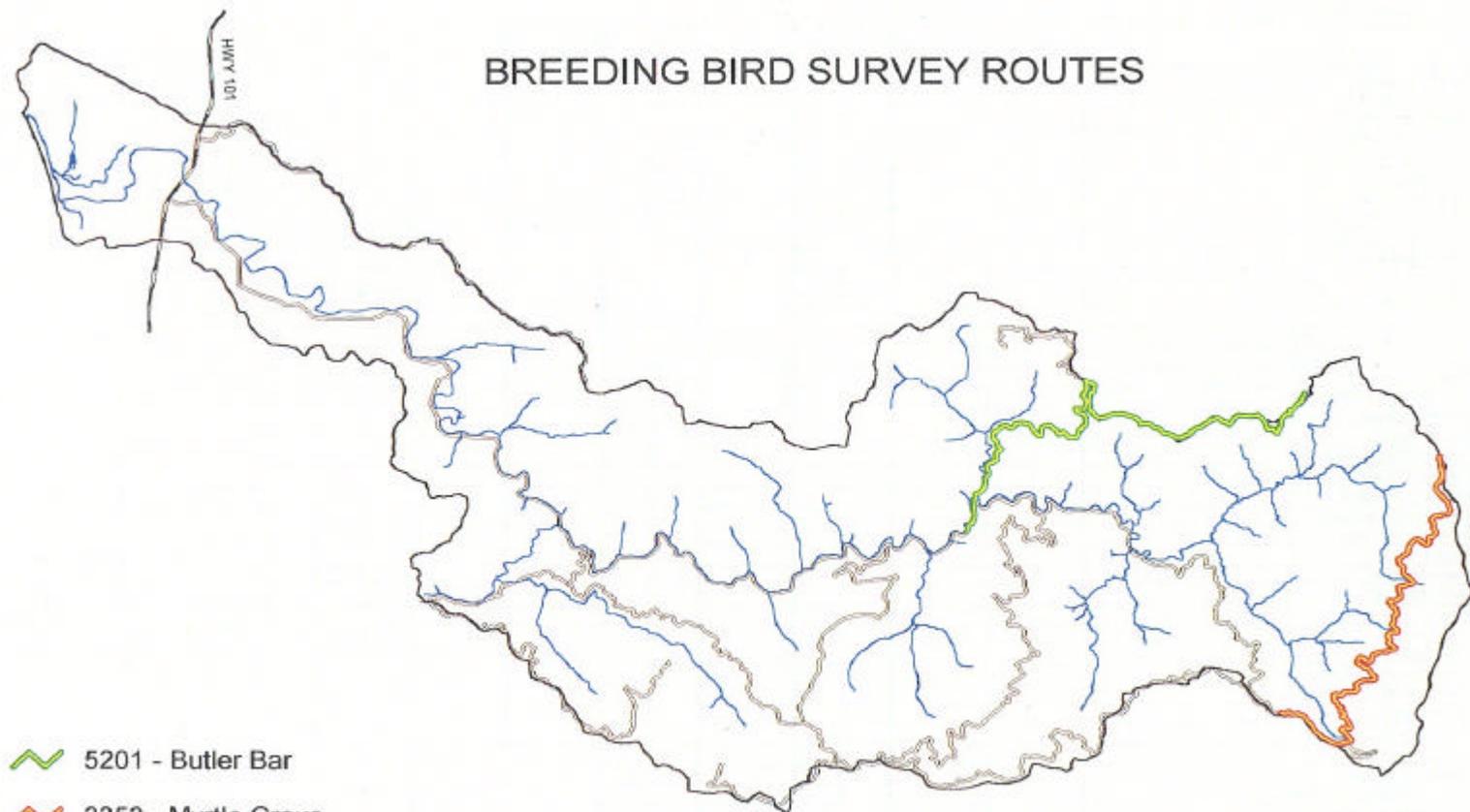
Neotropical Migrant Bird Species: Concern for bird species that breed in the United States and winter in Central and South America has been mounting for the past several decades. In order to better understand observed fluctuations in bird populations and possible causes, the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service began the Breeding Bird Survey in 1965 in Maryland and Delaware. Since then, the survey has expanded to most areas of the United States and Canada. Because the survey routes have been run for many years, it is possible to observe long-term trends, map accurately the ranges of species, and determine the relative breeding densities.

Powers has one official breeding bird survey route which begins in the South Fork Coquille Watershed and ends in Elk River on the south end of Iron Mountain. There are a total of 50 survey stations along a 25 mile route, 18 of which are in the Elk River (see Map 23). This survey route, begun in 1992, is run in June to document presence of breeding bird populations and in January to document winter bird populations. All survey data are mailed to the Breeding Bird Survey office in Laurel, Maryland for nationwide compilation of trends. Figure 16 displays individuals heard or observed for the 18 stations of the route which are in the Elk River watershed.

BREEDING BIRD SURVEY ROUTES

Map 23

Elk River - 67



- 5201 - Butler Bar
- 3353 - Myrtle Grove
- Roads
- Streams



Figure 16: Breeding and Winter Bird Survey Data For Elk River, 1992-1997

Species	1992		1993	1994	1995		1996		1997	
	Breed	Winter	Breed	Breed	Breed	Winter	Breed	Winter	Breed	Winter
Turkey vulture			1	1	1					
Mountain quail	1									
Band-tailed pigeon			1						2	
Rufous hummingbird	1		2	2	1		3			
Hairy woodpecker	1				2				1	
Pileated woodpecker	1	1	2		1			1		
Northern flicker	1		1	2	1		5		2	
Western wood peewee	1		4		1				2	
Olive-sided flycatcher	6			6	5				4	
Hammond's flycatcher				1	1		2			
Western flycatcher			2		1		1			
Steller's jay	7	1	15	13	8	1	11	3	15	1
Common raven	2									1
Black-capped chickadee			2		1					
Chestnut-backed chickadee	3	2	1						1	4
Bushtit									1	
Red-breasted nuthatch	1		3	5	7		4		6	
Brown creeper	1									
Winter wren	2			2	2		1	4	1	
Golden-crowned kinglet	5	10	2	5	2	2	1	1		15
Ruby-crowned kinglet	1									
Western bluebird					1					
Townsend's solitaire	2			1	2		2		1	
Swainson thrush	2		3	1	3		9		6	
Hermit thrush	7		16	12	15		19		13	
Varied thrush	6		2	2	1			1	3	
American robin	1						1		1	
Wrentit	3	1	5	4	8		8		5	
Hutton's vireo	3	2	2	3	2		1	3		2
Warbling vireo							2		2	
Orange-crowned warbler	2		9	7	5		2		3	
Black-throated gray warbler	2								1	
Hermit warbler	1		4	1	2		4		1	
MacGillivray's warbler			2	4	3		3			
Wilson's warbler	13		15	7	11		17		11	
Western tanager			1	1						
Black-headed grosbeak	1		2				2		3	
Rufous-sided towhee									1	
White-crowned sparrow							2			
Dark-eyed junco	4	13	1	2	2	6	1	6	3	2
Purple finch			2					2		
Red crossbill	1								4	

Evening grosbeak				3						
------------------	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Winter bird surveys were not done for 1993 and 1994. With only six years of data for a small portion of the watershed, any observed changes should be interpreted with caution and only in the context of trends obtained over longer periods of time. Large differences in individuals from one year to the next are likely the result of abrupt weather changes. Of the species displayed in the figure, the following are experiencing significant or near significant declines in populations throughout their range: olive-sided flycatcher (*Contopus borealis*), western wood-pewee (*Contopus sordidulus*), Hammond's flycatcher (*Empidonax hammondi*), swainson's thrush (*Catharus ustulatus*), band-tailed pigeon, and rufous hummingbird (*Selasphorus rufus*) (Sharp 1992). In the Elk River, the numbers are low for band-tailed pigeon and Hammond's flycatcher, somewhat higher for rufous hummingbird and western wood-pewee, and the highest for olive-sided flycatcher, and swainson's thrush. Again, it's difficult to make any conclusions except the need to continue with the surveys and to begin additional surveys in other parts of the watershed.

A portion of an unofficial breeding bird survey route (not registered with the Maryland office) lies in the northeast part of the watershed (see Map 23). This is a shorter route, 15 miles as opposed to the standard 25, and 22 stations fall in the watershed. Thus far, one year of data has been obtained (breeding data from June, 1996). November 1996 storms washed out road access and this route has not been run since.

Exotic Species

It is difficult to quantify the impacts that the resident exotic species, the Virginia opossum, black and Norway rats, European starlings, European house sparrows, and pigeons may be having on local, indigenous wildlife. Very little information is available on present distribution of exotic species in Oregon (Farrell 1997, personal communication). The impact of wild turkeys on native wildlife, should they ever become established in the watershed, would likely be small, though in some cases there may be competition for acorns. In some cases, starlings may establish wild populations and aggressively compete with native cavity nesters, particularly tree swallows (*Tachycineta bicolor*), western bluebirds (*Sialia sialis*), and some woodpeckers (Scott 1983).

If the nutria were to become established in the watershed, the impact could be high for resident muskrat populations. Nutria are larger mammals and are very aggressive in competing for shared food resources (Burt and Grossenheider 1976).

Additionally, the possible use of rodenticides in the lower river is a concern for impacts upon non-target species.

Influences of Human Activities on Wildlife Populations & Habitat

The influences of human activity in the watershed can be divided into four groups: roads, habitat removal, direct mortality, and harassment.

Roads: All types of roads and associated construction work affect wildlife by directly removing habitat, increasing human access, fragmenting habitats, and causing displacement and avoidance for some species (Evink et al. 1996). Certain species such as deer or elk may use roads as travel routes, however, during specific seasons (eg. calving season for elk) disturbance may still be high. For other species, such as amphibians, reptiles, and smaller mammals, a road can be a significant barrier. Negative effects can occur with birds also. A recent study on northern spotted owls (Wassar et al. 1997) found that owls whose home range was centered within .25 miles of a major logging road had double the amount of physiological stress than did owls whose home range was centered 1.8 miles from the road. Many old growth insect groups are flightless and live on the forest floor and roads will act as barriers for their dispersal (NFP, Vol. 1 1994). The construction of a road directly removes habitat and, depending on the proposed management of the road, can result in permanent access for humans. This in turn may result in direct mortality or displacement and avoidance of the road and corridor.

The type of road does influence the degree of impact placed on wildlife. For approximately 114 miles of road in Elk River on National Forest land, 94.2 miles are aggregate, 11.33 miles are paved (Elk River road), and approximately 4 miles, native surfaces. Paved surfaces have the most long term impact in terms of their permanence and increased usability. Native and gravel roads are more temporary and may be closed after projects are completed.

Road density is a useful criteria to examine impacts on wildlife. However, because species respond differently, management recommendations may be complex. Also, studies on road density effects typically have focused on larger mammals. Work done by Van Dyke et al. (1986) on mountain lions showed that approximately 1.0 miles of road/square mile is the maximum to have a naturally functioning landscape containing sustained populations of large mammals. At present, the road density in the watershed is 2.26 miles of road/square mile of land (excluding acres designated Wilderness). All of the subwatersheds have densities higher than 1.0 miles/square mile. The subwatersheds with the highest densities are Bald Mountain Creek (3.05), Lower Mainstem (2.79-predominantly private land), Panther Creek (2.77), Upper Mainstem (2.75), Butler Creek (2.50), and Blackberry Creek (1.90). Increased traffic volume can disturb or harass deer and elk, increasing the use of energy reserves (Geist 1978) and reducing suitable feeding and resting areas (Lyon and Basile 1980). Work done in western Montana indicates that topography can ameliorate the effect of roads and disturbance on elk by using topographical features to separate roads from sensitive areas (Edge and Marcum 1991).

Habitat Removal: Since the early part of the century, approximately 8,900 acres in Elk River (on National Forest land) have been managed. This reduction in mature, coniferous forest to early seral habitats affects wildlife in similar ways as road construction because both activities generally take place at the same time and results are similar. Removing portions of habitat fragments larger portions, allows for edge species to move in to previously unoccupied territory, may increase surface temperatures and decrease relative humidity, and displace resident wildlife. The size and location of interior habitats of late-successional forest need to be analyzed as well as patch sizes of different habitat types. Priority subwatersheds include Bald Mountain Creek, Panther Creek, Upper Mainstem, Butler Creek,, and Blackberry Creek.

Direct Mortality/Harassment: Increased access for forest users can result in increased direct mortality for certain species, particularly those hunted or trapped. Additionally, nontarget species caught in traps or killed on roadways occur more frequently with an increase of road densities. Harassment affects species differently. Constant, predictable vehicle traffic or use of an area can be adapted to by many wildlife. Others will leave the area altogether. Infrequent, unpredictable use may prove the most stressful for others, and stress will increase on these animals or they also will leave a site. Wildlife species most affected by direct mortality along roads include western screech owls (*Otus kennicottii*), snakes, rough-skinned newts (*Taricha granulosa*), raccoons, and spotted skunks (*Spilogale putorius*). In Elk River, this primarily occurs along the main, paved Elk River road (#5325) which averages 35 vehicles/day in winter and 100 or more during the summer.

Wildlife Habitats

The predominant habitat in the watershed is the mature hemlock/Douglas-fir temperate forest. In small amounts, other habitats exist including ponds, meadows, hardwood stands, and talus areas. These have been mapped as Special Wildlife Sites (Map 19) in the Siskiyou Forest Plan, of which the management goal is "to protect or enhance these unique wildlife habitats" (pg. IV-114). Many of these areas, though quite small, provide critical sites for those species restricted to a single habitat. They provide necessary reproductive habitat, refugia from adverse weather conditions, and protection from predators (Herrington 1988). There are approximately 75 acres of small lake/pond habitat in four locations, 47 acres of meadows in two different sites, one swamp/bog (10 acres), and several dispersed stands of hardwoods. Additionally, there are many miles of river and stream habitat and associated upland sites which function as essential habitat for many species, and scattered, unmapped areas of talus slopes.

Small lakes/ponds: Panther Lake, Bluebird Lake, Laird Lake, and Mt. Wells all provide year-round water sources, though Panther Lake often becomes quite low. Amphibians and reptiles benefit greatly at these

sites. Healthy red-legged frog populations occur at Bluebird Lake, Panther Lake, and Mt. Wells. Pacific tree frog (*Pseudacris regilla*) is also commonly found at Panther Lake. Pacific giant salamanders (*Dicamptodon tenebrosus*) are found in Laird Lake and slower portions of Bald Mountain Creek. Northwestern salamanders (*Ambystoma gracile*) are common in pumper fills and Bluebird Lake. Northwestern pond turtles have been planted in Bluebird Lake and are surviving. The ponds also provide important habitat for mammals, birds, and insects. Pond habitat has never been abundant in the watershed.

Meadows: There is one very small meadow (4 acres), McGribble Meadows, along Bald Mountain Creek, and one large meadow system, Bald Mt. Meadows, along the southern boundary of the watershed. Bald Mountain Meadows has an extensive history of recent management and will be discussed more in the habitat enhancement section. Deer, blue grouse, red-tailed hawks (*Buteo jamaicensis*), bluebirds, rabbits, and rodents use meadows extensively. Open areas, besides clearcuts, which actually brush in quite quickly, are very few on the district.

Swamp/bog: Toast Camp is the only mapped swampy, boggy site in Elk River. It is approximately 10 acres in size and though one boundary has existing clearcut units, most of the area is connected to mid to late seral habitat. (The other wildlife areas are surrounded by late seral habitat). This is very important for those species that need the habitat of small openings but are generally restricted to closed canopy forest.

Hardwoods: Hardwoods stands in Elk River are primarily tanoak, live oak, chinkapin species in upland areas and red alder and maple in riparian sites. The hardwood component of coniferous forests is extremely important and often overlooked. Both upland and riparian hardwood stands provide key habitats for breeding neotropical (and winter resident) songbirds. In 1982, an avian census was completed in 8 tanoak/mixed-stand sites, 6 of which had no overstory, the other two, large Douglas-fir (Werschkul and Swisher 1983). All were located on the western slope of the Siskiyou National Forest (similar studies have not been done specifically for the Elk River watershed). During the breeding season, forty-six species were observed. Tanoak habitats with and without overstories had the highest number of breeding birds, which primarily were insect gleaning canopy feeders. Larger, winter birds moved in during the autumn, such as the varied thrush (*Ixoreus naevius*) and American robin (*Turdus migratorius*), and fed on tanoak acorns and madrone seeds.

Riparian and Upland Areas: Riparian areas, streams and rivers, function as central and necessary components for most wildlife to survive. The streambed itself is critical for frogs and salamanders to breed as well as aquatic insects and fish species. Many bat species forage disproportionately in riparian areas and will roost more frequently there than in other nearby habitats (Cross 1988). Since 1.5 times more small mammals (shrews, moles, voles, and mice) are found in riparian habitat than in upland habitat (Cross 1980), harsh changes in the stream environment are known to profoundly affect populations of some small mammals species (Cross 1985). Because riparian corridors act as connections between pieces of habitat, are important travel corridors, and provide microclimatic refuge for hillslope animals during times of thermal stress, there has been much focus on their management and protection. Of equal importance, though much less understood and studied, are the upland habitats away from the immediate stream area and their function for wildlife during migration, summer dry periods, and winter, rainy periods.

In terms of amphibians, there are very few density estimates for upland habitats (Bury 1988). Although wildlife often use riparian zones and wetlands disproportionately more than upland areas, some species rely heavily on terrestrial habitats, including the clouded salamander (*Aneides ferreus*), ensatina (*Ensatina eschscholtzii*), western red-backed salamander (*Plethodon vehiculum*), and the western terrestrial garter snake (*Thamnophis elegans*). The three amphibian species spend some time in the riparian zone but are more dependent on upland sites for breeding and cover (Bury 1988). The clouded salamander has been found around Panther Lake, the ensatina at Bluebird Lake, in forested stands west of Laird Lake, and below the Bald Mountain pumper fill, and the western red-backed salamander along the Elk River road. The western terrestrial garter snake is common throughout the watershed. Most of the snakes and lizards use both riparian and upland habitats. Northwestern pond turtles may travel as much as .5 miles from and 300' above water for egg laying. Most nests, however, are within 90 meters of a water source (Storm and

Leonard 1995). Additionally, headwaters and smaller streams (sites where often there is a poorly developed or virtually no riparian area) are critical for amphibian survival in terms of maintaining populations that will recolonize sites post-harvest. Protection of these areas reduce sediments and fines potentially being added to the system (Bury and Corn 1988).

Riparian vegetation in the western United States provides habitat for more bird species during the breeding season and during migration than surrounding uplands (Knopf et al. 1988). However, as illustrated with the tanoak discussion, upland sites also play a very critical role in the survival of neotropical migrants. Large, mixed-species flocks will disperse upslope along riparian corridors from their nest locations to wet meadow/riparian-shrub habitats at higher elevations (Vroman 1994). The insect populations that help juveniles build fat reserves for migration are located along riparian corridors and the wet meadow/brushfield sites. Throughout riparian and upland sites, many neotropical migrant bird species use hardwood or deciduous brush species for nesting and foraging habitat.

A study in the central Oregon Coast Range (McGarigal 1992) comparing streamside breeding bird communities with upslope breeding bird communities indicated that streamside were dramatically less important than upslope areas in contributing to the avifauna of mature, unmanaged forest stands. This contradicts what Knopf et al. determined, however, much of their work was in very dry, desert conditions where water is concentrated in only a few locations. In the Oregon coast range, where water is not a limiting factor, habitat use occurs across a broader array of habitats. Species diversity, richness, and total bird abundance was greater along upslope transects than along streams, and upslope areas accounted for 91% of the bird species as compared with 67% along streams. Strong association with uplands may have been a response to the greater number of snags and large conifers in upslope areas than along streams. The authors theorize that streamside protection alone may not be sufficient to meet the needs of the breeding avifauna, nor provide suitable travel and dispersal routes for species strongly associated with mature forests and upslope areas. Chestnut-backed chickadee (*Parus rufescens*) and golden-crowned kinglet (*Regulus satrapa*) species have experienced significant annual population declines in western Oregon and Washington over the past 20 years (Breeding Bird Survey data), and are strongly associated with mature forests and upslope areas. In the Elk River watershed, breeding numbers for chestnut-backed chickadee are low or zero during some years and only slightly higher for golden-crowned kinglets (see Figure 16).

Small mammal communities were surveyed at four sites in southwestern Oregon in mixed conifer habitat types (Cross 1985) (we have no data from the Elk River watershed). Specifically, small mammal abundance, species richness, and species diversity were analyzed via live and snap trapping in three zones: the immediate riparian zone, a transitional zone, and an upland zone. Small mammal abundance was twice as high in the riparian and transition zones as the upland zone. Species richness and diversity were greatest in the riparian zones. Riparian Reserves, as outlined in the NFP, appear to maintain riparian communities of small mammals at levels comparable to nearby undisturbed areas. However, given that small mammals are relatively sedentary, increased Riparian Reserve widths may be necessary to satisfy the requirements of permanent living space for more mobile species.

Though the data are few for the Elk River watershed, it is clear from studies in the Coast Range the importance for many wildlife species of areas upslope from the riparian corridor.

Late-Successional Forest: Late-successional, or old-growth, habitat is critical for many species of wildlife. That portion of the watershed designated as Late-Successional Reserve is to be managed specifically for late-successional species. The objective is to “protect and enhance conditions of late-successional and old-growth forest ecosystems...” (ROD, page C-9). A possible enhancement method involves thinning second growth stands within the LSR. At this writing, an analysis has not been completed to identify possible locations; this will be critical to any future habitat enhancement in LSR. This analysis should include, but is not limited to, examination of factors such as site indices, aspect, age, proximity to anadromous streams, habitat connections, and interior habitat.

Retention of old-growth fragments in certain locations, for example, around the marbled murrelet occupied sites (3 for the Elk River watershed in Matrix) and northern spotted owl activity centers (0 presently in the Matrix), will be critical for some species, particularly those that are locally endemic, only occur in certain forest conditions, or have limited dispersal capabilities (NFP, Vol.1 1994). The size of these fragments will vary with the species under consideration. Smaller patches (25 acres or less) may be sufficient to maintain populations of arthropods, fungi, lichens, bryophytes, vascular plants, and invertebrate animals.

Talus: Talus slopes, varying in rock size, aspect, and in the amount and type of vegetation present, are important areas for many amphibians, reptiles, and mammals. Though talus typically makes up only a small portion of the watershed, it functions critically for, 1) species that are restricted to talus slopes (in Elk River this would include the Del Norte salamander), 2) species that use talus to avoid potentially lethal temperature extremes, and 3) reproductive activities, particularly with live-bearing reptiles (Herrington 1988). Talus as denning and rearing habitat for mammals is common, particularly with predators (mountain lions, bobcats), including ringtails for which very little is known except that Powers Ranger District is the northern extreme of their range. Species emphasized earlier that require talus include fisher and to some degree, marten. Additionally, voles and mice are closely tied with talus (Brown 1985).

Landscape Habitat Arrangement

The primary wildlife habitat in Elk River is that of mature western hemlock/Douglas fir coniferous forest. Approximately, 8,900 of the total 46,000 National Forest acres have been harvested in the past 60 years. The units are at different stages of the successional stages and provide an element of diversity for wildlife. They are spread across the eastern two-thirds of the watershed in a mosaic pattern. The ponds and small lakes are close together, < 2 miles apart on average, along the southeast boundary. There also exist 15 created pumper fill sites spread across the entire watershed on National Forest land. Bald Mountain and McGribble Meadows are within 3 miles of each other along the southwest boundary. Hardwood stands and riparian areas are located throughout the watershed. There are no talus sights mapped but they do exist, at least as small areas.

The lower river and private portion of the watershed (approximately 12,000 acres) has a very different array of habitats. Very small, patchy stands of late-successional forest possibly remain in scattered clumps. The predominant ownerships are several timber companies (4,000 acres), private ranches (3,100 acres), and private individuals (4,860 acres). Much of the private timber land exists as inholdings within the National Forest boundary, creating open areas surrounded by early, mid, or late seral stands. The large ranches are off National Forest land and effectively serve as meadow habitat for many species, though the emphasis and how the land is managed focuses on raising domestic livestock. Land belonging to private individuals exists in a variety of successional stages.

Habitat Enhancement Projects

The types of habitat work done in the past include the following:

Wildlife Tree Topping: Removing the tops from wildlife trees left in clearcut harvest units began in the 1980s as an effective way to 1) reduce windthrow vulnerability, and 2) create snag habitat sooner than what would occur naturally. In the Elk River watershed 111 trees in 15 units have been topped since 1985 (see Appendix I). Additionally, in 1990, several trees were topped along the edges of the Bald Mt. Meadows.

In 1993, a monitoring program was begun to determine the fates of wildlife trees left in regeneration units, topped and not topped. Data was recorded such as history of the unit (burning, logging systems, etc) and photo points were taken. These units are being revisited in 1997 and the photographs will provide documentation on the survival rate. Units being examined in Elk River are Mt. Wells and one unit in Iron Sucker.

Aerial Forage Seeding: Aerial forage seeding has been used as a management tool for widespread application of a forage mix for deer and elk, and as an erosion control method. In Elk River, 294 acres have been treated since 1979 (see Appendix J). All treatment areas have been regeneration harvest units.

McGribble Meadows: In 1984, meadow restoration and enhancement was done on 4 acres in the McGribble Meadows, which included removal of encroaching conifers and creation of snags at the meadow edge.

Bald Mountain Meadows: In August 1990, the environmental assessment for Bald Mountain Meadows was completed per the Siskiyou Forest Plan. The EA addressed restoring the meadow system to its 1940 size via mechanical treatments and burning. The first burns in two of the meadows were completed in September 1990. From 1990 to 1995, various projects involving slashing of conifers were done and in September 1996, burning was done in three meadow areas. Some firewood was removed from this slash in 1992. Plans to burn again are in place for September 1998, weather conditions permitting.

The **AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM** of the watershed is discussed at two different scales:
the watershed scale addresses processes, conditions, and history for the entire watershed
the subwatershed scale discusses the smaller tributary watersheds and stream reaches.

AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM - Watershed Level

- Landslides and Surface Erosion
- Water Clarity
- Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem
- Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature
- Stream Flow
- Channel Morphology
- Stream Water Temperature and Stream Flow Effects on Fish
- Productive Flats
- Fish Habitat, Distribution, Populations

Landslides and Surface Erosion

Landslides and surface erosion are long-term processes of landscape formation and deliver sediment to stream channels.

Landslides

Landslides in the Elk River watershed vary considerably in size and age, from large, ancient, inactive features to small, active slides. The ancient features are believed to have been active during a different climatic setting, such as a wet period following a glacial advance. Earthquakes may also trigger large landslides. A moderate sized landslide was apparently triggered by an earthquake centered off Crescent City, California, in October, 1980, onto a section of the Elk River road below Butler Bar.

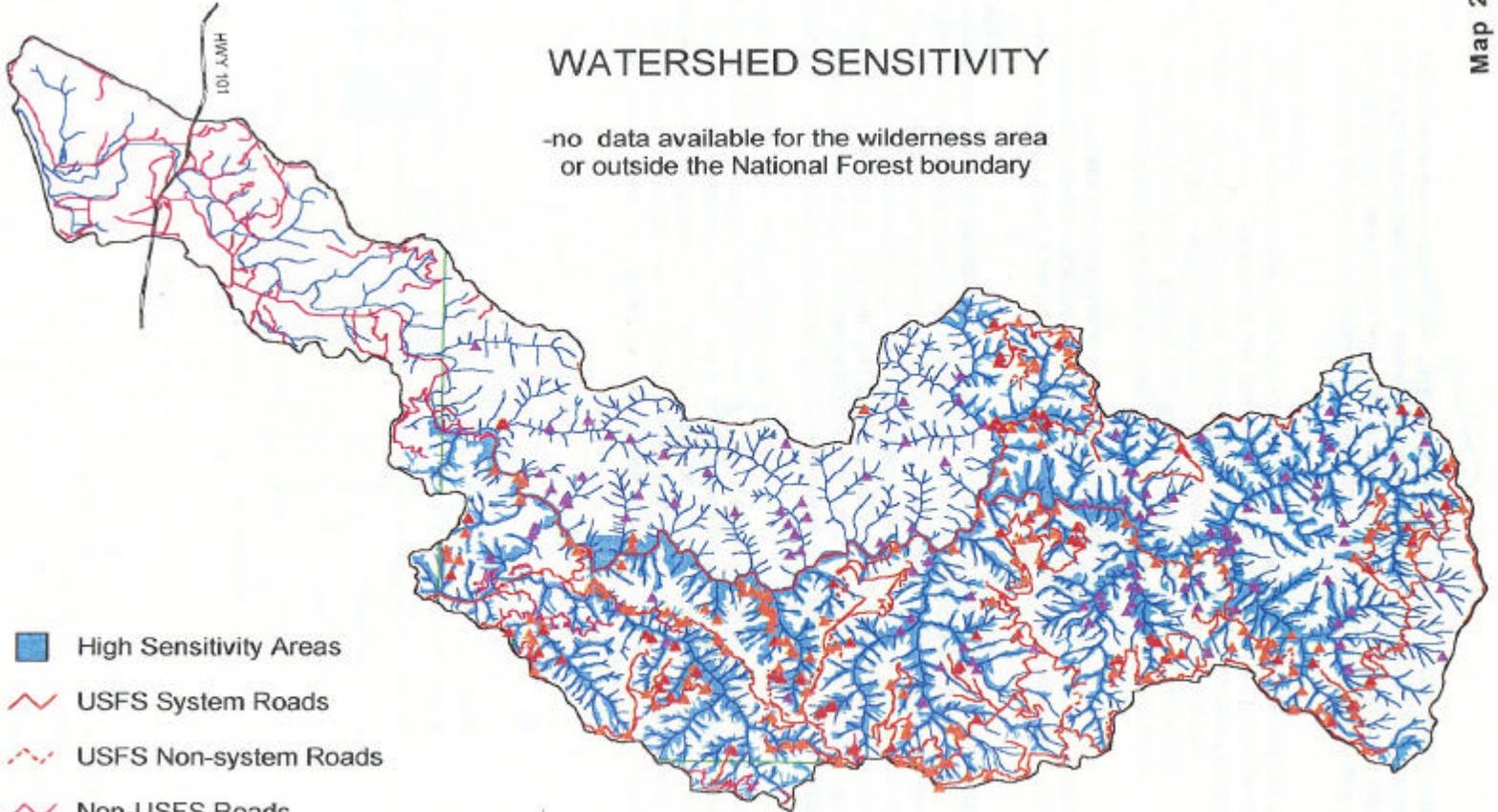
Within the watershed, streamside debris slides and slumps are more abundant types of landslides than earthflows and debris flows (McHugh 1987, Ryan and Grant 1991). Debris slides and slumps deliver large wood and boulders directly to stream channels, providing habitat complexity (see Large Wood Supply and Channel Morphology). Deep, slow-moving earthflows deliver large wood and fine sediment via marginal gullies or slides from their toeslopes. Where soils are formed on highly sheared or carbonaceous shales of the Galice Formation, slopes are more prone to slumps, earthflows, and streamside debris slides (Map 5). Shallow, rapidly-moving debris flows scour through stream channels, moving large wood and uprooting riparian vegetation. Debris flows tend to be located on steeper slopes (Map 6) underlain by diorite or Cretaceous sandstones (McHugh 1987).

The relative probability of delivery from landslides was interpreted from 1986 aerial photographs (1:12,000 scale). Zones of high, moderate, and low "watershed sensitivity" were delineated based on slope angle, slope shape, geologic structure (faults), proximity to streams, and presence and types of landslides in similar terrain. The watershed sensitivity map is shown with the inventoried landslides that have been active within the period of air photo record (Map 24).

Map 24

WATERSHED SENSITIVITY

-no data available for the wilderness area or outside the National Forest boundary



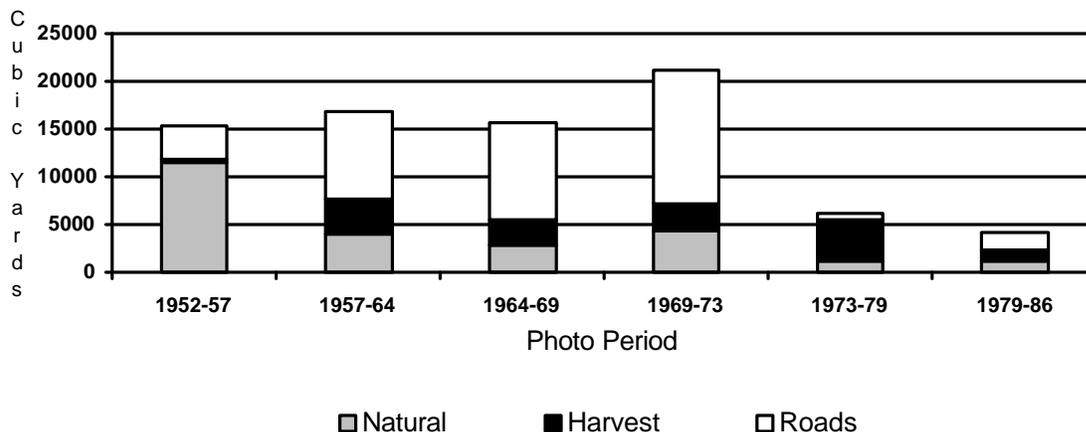
- High Sensitivity Areas
- USFS System Roads
- - - USFS Non-system Roads
- Non-USFS Roads
- National Forest Boundary
- Streams

- Landslide Causes:
- ▲ Road
 - ▲ Clearcut
 - ▲ Natural



Landslide volumes were estimated using methods discussed in Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis. Figure 17 displays the natural, harvest-related, and road-related landslide volume rates, calculated as the volume of landslides per year. Natural landslides occurred at the highest rate during the time period which included the 1955 storm. Landslides triggered by the November 1996 storm have not yet been inventoried.

Figure 17: Landslides above Anvil Creek (cubic yards)



Road and timber harvest-related landslides differ from naturally-occurring processes in timing, amount of sediment delivered to a stream channel, amount of large wood included, and degree of disruption of the surface and subsurface flow of water. The history of road construction and timber harvest is illustrated in Map 25. Road and harvest-related landslides within the watershed delivered 2.2 times more sediment volume than naturally-occurring landslides between 1952 and 1986. Landslide sediment delivery within each subwatershed is displayed in the subwatershed section.

The area mapped as high watershed sensitivity (Map 24) includes all of the inventoried harvest-related landslides, and delineates areas that need field examination for slope stability prior to harvest. Where hillslopes are marginally stable, the short-term loss of tree root cohesion from timber harvest can cause landslides. Tree removal also decreases the volume of water removed from soils by evapotranspiration. In areas where soils are deep and fine-textured, groundwater levels may be elevated over time. Deep-seated slides may become more active or enlarge. Special harvest prescriptions (eg. partial cuts, modified harvest layout) may be necessary within the groundwater influence area to minimize potential adverse effects.

Because trees are removed from the site, harvest-related landslides have delivered less large wood to channels than naturally-occurring landslides. The percentage of sediment from landslides delivered to streams is higher where trees have been harvested from riparian areas.

Along roads, soil disturbance and interception of water flow can cause landslides on parts of the landscape that would not normally fail. Existing road-related slides are located primarily on high watershed sensitivity lands, but 25% are located on moderate watershed sensitivity lands (Map 24). The amount of large wood delivered by road-related slides depends on whether trees have been harvested from the slopes below. For all road-related slides, the average percentage of sediment that is delivered to streams is lower than the percentage for naturally-occurring slides. Where roads cross streams, the percentage delivery is higher.

The number of landslides per mile of road decreased considerably for roads constructed after 1974 (Figure 18). After 1974, roads were located away from streams, as indicated by the decrease in road-stream crossings. Road fills on steep slopes were end-hauled to more stable locations rather than side-cast. These road practices were improved after 1974, but 93% of the road network had already been constructed.

ELK RIVER LAND USE HISTORY: TIMBER HARVEST AND ROADS

Map 25

Elk River - 77

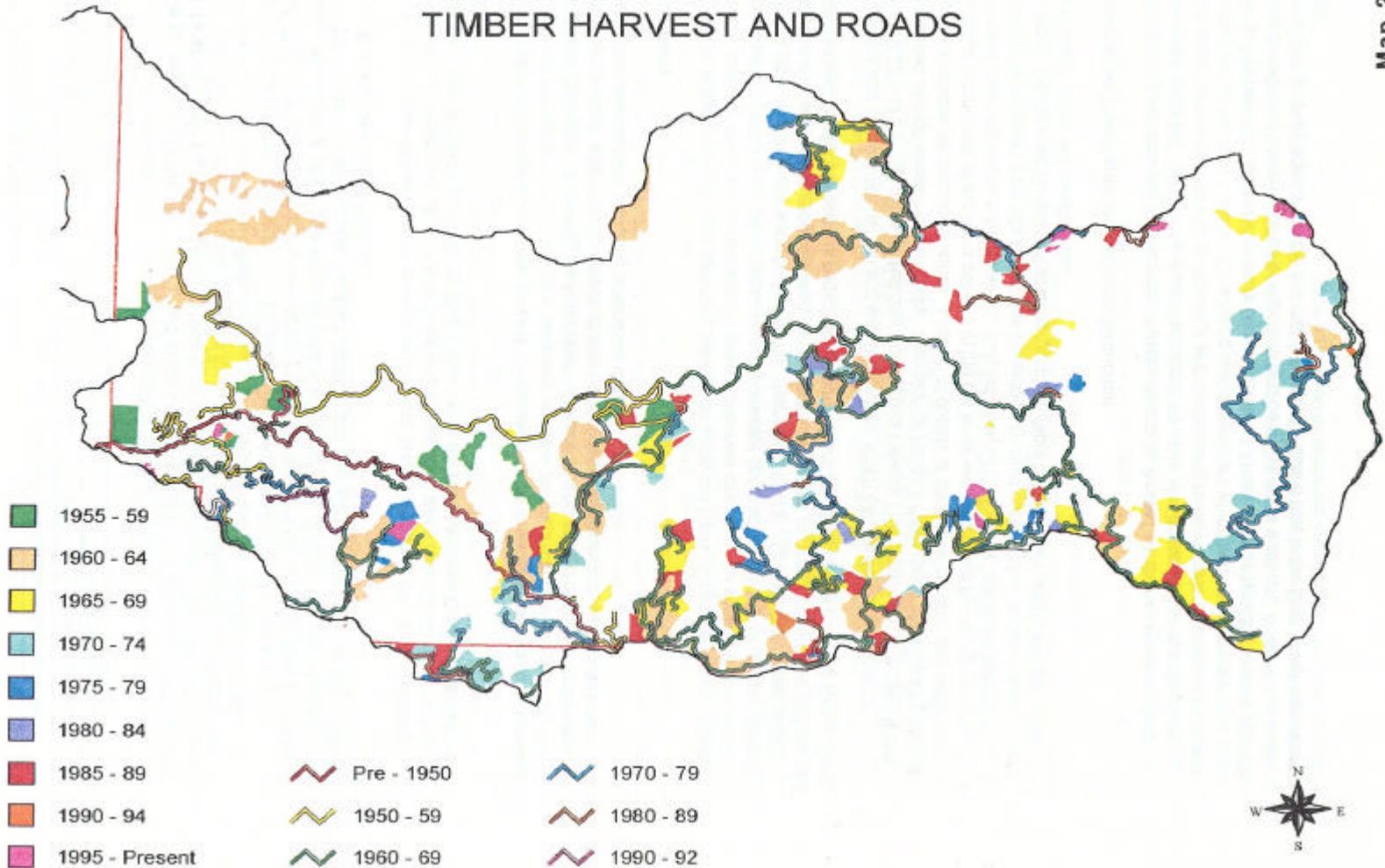


Figure 18: Frequency of Landslides/Mile of Road

	Stream Crossings/Mile of Road	Landslides/Mile of Road
Constructed Pre-1974	4.46 crossings/mile	1.21 landslides/mile
Constructed 1974-1986	2.80 crossings/mile	0.17 landslides/mile

The dominant mechanisms for road-related landslides in the Elk River watershed were not known in detail prior to the storm of November 1996. Field evidence is often subtle and disappears with age and road maintenance. Field surveys of damaged road-stream crossings (summer, 1997) have documented sites with inadequate drainage structures, potential for diversion of stream channels down roads, and interactions between harvest-related effects and roads. The largest road failures occurred in Panther Creek, North Fork Elk River, and South Fork Elk River. It is unknown whether the intensity of the November 1996 storm varied across the watershed, so that some potentially unstable sites did not fail. Interpretation and analysis of the post-storm air photos will identify any patterns that can help predict future road failure sites. Field surveys of culvert capacity and diversion potential are needed to identify crossings with a high likelihood of failure.

Failures of sidecast road fills were more common in the past, but uncompacted fills (that may contain woody material) will continue to cause debris flows where located in steep channel heads. This type of failure caused a debris flow in a tributary to Bear Creek within the Bald Mountain Creek watershed, in April 1993.

Where both roads and timber harvest are present, landslides may be larger or more frequent. However, quantifying these interactions would require a relatively complex geographical analysis, that has not been completed (data gap). Following the November 1996 storm, road-related channel erosion was observed to cause larger and more numerous stream bank slides in harvested areas (results from Preliminary Flood Assessment including other watersheds).

Surface Erosion

Surface erosion is a source of chronic sediment delivery on some soil types. Coarse sediment moves downslope by creep or ravel, and is delivered to stream channels directly or via shallow debris slides. Ravel occurs most commonly on steep slopes on conglomerate and fractured diorite or gabbro (Maps 5 and 6). In the past, harvest units were burned at high intensity in the fall. On extremely steep slopes where duff and litter were consumed, exposed mineral soil was subject to rainsplash erosion and the rate of ravel accelerated. Surface erosion is negligible on more recent low to moderate intensity spring burns.

Roads intercept and concentrate rainfall and subsurface flow, which can cause surface erosion. Approximately 22% of the 167 miles of National Forest road network (1993 estimate) is located within the area mapped as high watershed sensitivity. Diversion of streams down roads has caused both gully erosion and landslides as discussed above. Erosion of outlets of ditch relief culverts and waterbars is a relatively minor component of sediment delivery in the Elk River watershed due to the high rock fragment content of most soils (Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis). However, abundant sand and silt-sized sediment is delivered from rills and gullies developed on road cuts and fills in decomposed diorite (low cohesion). Diorite road surfacing that is marginally durable breaks down readily into abundant fines, particularly during wet weather use.

Road Restoration Treatments for Sediment Reduction

Roads with the highest potential for sediment delivery tend to be located within the high watershed sensitivity areas (Map 24). Within the watershed, about 10 miles of road have been hydrologically decommissioned; removing road fills at crossings and constructing closely-spaced waterbars to control water intercepted by the road surface. On existing roads, sediment which had been sidecast from roads and landings has been "pulled back" to more stable positions. These projects typically remove 200-800 cubic yards of sediment which might otherwise slide and be delivered to a stream. Road fill has been

pulled back from an area adjacent to the site that generated a debris flow in the Bear Creek watershed in April, 1993.

Road Management Objectives (RMOs) have been developed for each system road on the District, using an inter-disciplinary team process. Roads are assigned a level (1 - 5), based partly on their expected use, with a level 1 road being the least used. All levels of roads are maintained on a regular schedule, with the lower levels receiving less frequent maintenance (every other year instead of every year). RMO's cover all aspects of the road and include potential concerns noted by the specialists, such as Port Orford Cedar concerns or other watershed concerns. These concerns are mitigated where possible during design if it is a new road, reconstruction if it is an existing road, or during restoration activities. The District annually reviews and updates the "Flood Emergency Road Management Plan" (FERM), which outlines patrol responsibilities, reporting, and monitoring of the road system during a major storm event. This plan is also used as an informal guide during lesser storm events.

Older non-system roads have revegetated, but may still have sites with potential to generate landslides. Field evaluations have been conducted on these roads in the Purple Mountain Creek and South Fork Elk River watersheds (Bakke, 1994 report and Weinhold, 1995 survey forms), but are needed for other roads, including some on private lands within the National Forest boundary.

Water Clarity

The water clarity of Elk River is outstanding, and is recognized as being a critical component of several river values. The striking blue-green color and crystalline water quality are exceptional. Water clarity affects recreational uses such as fishing, boating, rafting, and sight-seeing along the Elk River. The Oregon State Salmon Hatchery at Elk River uses this clear river water in their rearing ponds.

The water of the Elk River is clear most of the year, except during major winter storms when sediment from banks and slides can cloud the water for short periods. Sediment delivered to the Elk River has a high content of coarse grained material, which rapidly settles out of suspension. This reduces the potential effect on water clarity, and gives the river the ability to clear far more rapidly than other rivers. Soils with higher clay contents are more likely to produce turbid water when disturbed, but these soils are relatively uncommon in the watershed (Map 8). Turbidity is detected periodically from Bald Mountain Creek, where the toe of an earthflow is eroded by the stream (see subwatershed section).

Mining activities such as suction dredging during low flows can cloud the water for a short section below the mining activity. Elk River was withdrawn from mining activities on February 17, 1994, except for valid mining claims. There are two mining claims in Elk River, one which has been determined to be valid and the second which is currently being examined for validity. The Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ) reported no violations of Water Quality Standards from mining activity on lands managed by the Forest Service. Several violations were reported below the Forest boundary on lands managed by the Bureau of Land Management. None of the reported violations resulted in enforcement actions or penalties (Rubin Kretzschmar, DEQ, oral communication, 1997).

Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem

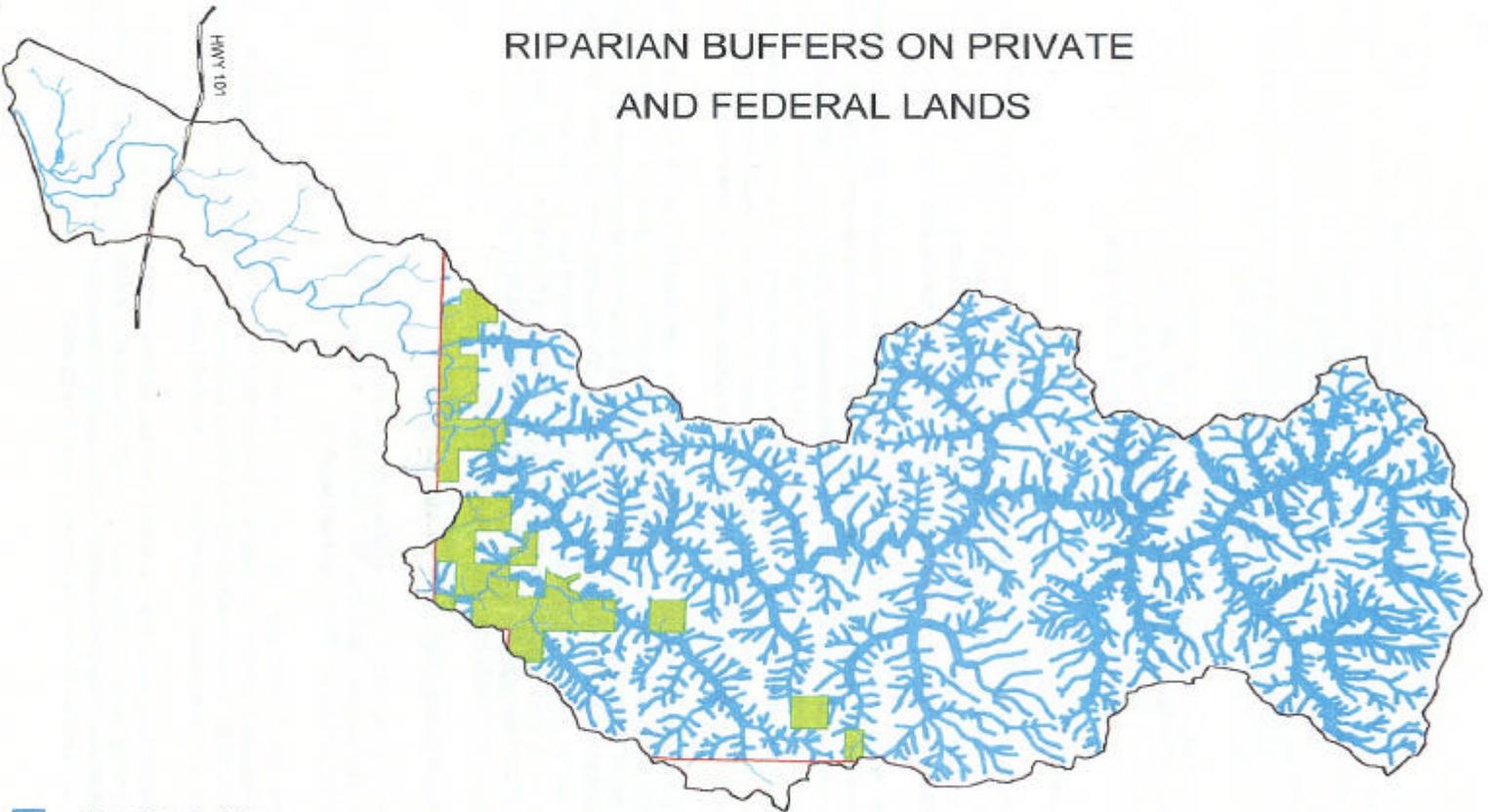
Large wood is delivered to stream channels by landslides, by falling from adjacent riparian areas, and by transport from upstream sites (Map 26). The importance of large wood for fish habitat is discussed in the Channel Morphology and Productive Flats sections.

Along the lower Elk River valley, land adjacent to the river has been cleared for pasture, and much of the riparian vegetation removed. In 1883, A. G. Walling noted that Elk River was used to transport up to 10,000 board feet of white cedar (Port-Orford-cedar) logs daily. It is likely that these log drives altered or destroyed riparian vegetation, and removed large wood and jams.

Above the hatchery, salvage and selective cedar harvest have removed some large wood from the stream. During the 1970's, large wood jams were removed from several tributaries because many scientists believed they created barriers to fish passage for spawning. This practice was discontinued as a result of research indicating the beneficial value of large wood.

Map 26

RIPARIAN BUFFERS ON PRIVATE AND FEDERAL LANDS



-  Riparian Buffers
-  National Forest Boundary
-  Private Lands Within Forest Boundary



Areas delineated as high watershed sensitivity for delivery of sediment are also potential sources of large wood. Past harvest within these areas has reduced the potential supply of large wood to stream channels by 27 percent. While there is probably a sufficient supply of potential large wood within the watershed, specific areas may have been seriously depleted (see subwatershed section).

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature

Stream temperature is a function of several factors including solar intensity, climate, channel morphology, vegetative/topographic shade, channel shape, and the amount of stream surface area exposed to solar radiation. Large storms and human activities, such as timber harvest, mining, and roads also have the potential to influence stream temperature by altering the amount of shade-producing vegetation and channel shape.

In 1940, riparian areas on the mainstem were well-vegetated with mature and old growth Douglas-fir and hardwoods. Aerial photographs reveal mature trees on the flood plains, indicating that major disturbances had not occurred in several decades.

There is not sufficient stream temperature data available prior to 1968 to assess the effects that the floods of 1955 and 1964 had on stream temperature. The effects of the 1955 and 1964 floods can only be estimated by comparing channel and vegetation changes on historic aerial photographs. Dramatic changes are evident by comparing the 1940 photos with those taken soon after the 1955 flood.

The Elk River road, which parallels the mainstem, was constructed in the riparian area on the south bank. The combination of road construction in 1954 followed by high flood flows in 1955, that caused massive road failures, resulted in a major loss of several miles of riparian vegetation on the south bank. Because the mainstem is primarily oriented east to west, the south bank can provide approximately 95 percent of the potential stream shade. Vegetation accounts for potentially 62 percent of the stream shade with topography providing the remaining shade. The loss of shade trees and channel changes probably resulted in increasing summer stream temperatures on the mainstem by several degrees. After the next major storm, in 1964, further changes were evident, but significantly fewer than occurred in 1955.

Today, the riparian area on the south bank remains altered from its pre-1955 condition. The riparian area below the road in several areas has a larger component of hardwoods and immature conifers and less mature conifers. Hardwoods are not sufficient in height to adequately shade the mainstem during the summer. As the conifers continue to grow, stream shade will increase.

Figure 19: Maximum Stream Temperature on the Mainstem at the Fish Hatchery

Year	1970	1974	1976	1984	1991	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996	1997
	69.0 F	72.0 F	68.2 F	67.2 F	69.3 F	69.3 F	68.2 F	66.7 F	68.0 F	67.3 F	68.4 F
	21.1 C	22.2 C	20.1 C	19.6 C	20.7 C	20.7 C	20.1 C	19.3 C	20.0 C	19.1 C	20.2 C

(Note: The average of the 7 consecutive day maximum temperature should be used for determining temperature trends. However only single day maximum temperatures are available from 1970 to 1984 so, maximum stream temperature was used).

The majority of the heating of the Elk River appears to be occurring in the upper reaches of the mainstem, below the confluence of the North and South Fork, and 4 to 5 miles below the Fish Hatchery. These high temperatures are presumably due to the wide channel and lack of shading vegetation (McSwain 1988). Mainstem maximum temperatures, 5 miles below the hatchery, were reported as being critical reaching 75 F (23.9 C) (Susac 1991, personal communication).

With the loss of some of the mainstem stream shade provided by conifers, tributaries with cool water are critical in helping to lower mainstem temperatures. Six of the tributaries -- North and South Fork, Red Cedar, Purple, Milbury and Blackberry Creeks -- have cool summer peak temperatures ranging from the

high 50°F to low 60°F and help to lower mainstem temperatures. Three tributaries, Butler, Bald Mountain, and Panther Creeks, are warm with peak temperatures ranging from 66°F to 68°F. They have little or no effect on buffering mainstem temperatures. The higher stream temperature in these three tributaries is the result of timber harvest and road construction.

The 1994/1996 Clean Water Act Section 303 (d) list found the mainstem of Elk River water quality limited for summer stream temperature (refer to Clean Water Act Section 303 (d)).

Stream Flow

The average annual water yield is estimated to be 267,000 acre feet. Low mean monthly flows of 20-100 cubic feet per second (cfs) occur between June and October, and high flows of 1000-6000 cfs occur between November and April. Storms which caused high streamflows in the area can be determined from the USGS gauge on the South Fork of the Coquille River at Powers, Oregon. Peak flows of a magnitude greater than the 10-year return interval occurred in 1944, 1955, 1964, and 1971 (Ryan and Grant 1991), and 1982 (McSwain 1987). The December 1964 flow was estimated to have an 80-150 year return interval.

Aspects of streamflow that have the greatest effect on aquatic habitat are quantity, peak flows which affect channel morphology and fish, low flows which restrict migration and reduce available habitat, and the size and frequency of channel-forming events. All of these may be affected by timber harvest and road construction. However, studies quantifying the effects have found results varying from no effect to highly significant effects, depending on the characteristics of the watershed being studied. Because watershed characteristics in the Klamath Mountains/Siskiyou province are unique to this province, results of studies in other areas may not be applicable to the Elk River watershed. Therefore, some mechanisms that could contribute to effects on streamflow will be discussed in this section, but not specific effects or quantities.

Road surfaces and cutslopes intercept water, and road ditches act as intermittent streams, transporting water more rapidly than natural processes. These properties of roads combine to change the timing and increase the size of peak flows. The potential for effects from increased peak flows are the greatest in areas where road density is highest and stream banks are unstable. Potential effects include increased channel erosion and a decrease in spawning success of some fish species. The watershed area above the hatchery has an overall road density of 2.3 miles of road per square mile of land. This road density increases the stream channel network by less than five percent (Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis). The channel network expansion is greater in some subwatersheds; in Milbury Creek, the most densely roaded area at 5.1 miles per square mile, the channel network is expanded by approximately 25 percent. The magnitude of increased peak flows resulting from roads is unknown.

Harvested areas can increase snow accumulation and a rain on snow event can result in rapid melting of the snow, increasing peak flows (Harr 1976). Less than 5 percent of the total watershed area is in the transient snow zone, and only a small percentage of this area has been harvested. Consequently, it is not likely that peak flows have been affected by existing harvest activities in areas that may be susceptible to rain on snow events.

Channel Morphology

Water and sediment interact with landforms, bedrock, boulders, and large wood to shape the stream channel. Stream flows which are large enough to transport sediment in the stream bed can alter channel morphology. Sediment delivered to stream channels may be transported or stored, depending on the amount, particle size, and timing of the input. Increased sediment input may cause channel widening and braiding, increased frequency of bed sediment transport (increased mobility), and storage of sediment on floodplains, in gravel bars, and within the channel causing decreased pool area (Sullivan et al. 1987). These effects, known collectively as "aggradation", may be observed in channels with lower stream gradients, where velocities are infrequently high enough to transport the sediment. Sediment storage along channels may delay downstream effects of sediment transport, providing a "buffering" effect.

Changes in patterns of open riparian canopies are one indicator of channel response to disturbance. Ryan and Grant (1991) measured these patterns on six subwatersheds in Elk River on aerial photos from 1956 to 1979. This technique does not detect aggradation or degradation when streamside vegetation is not affected, or minor changes in channel location or geometry (Grant 1988).

Ryan and Grant (1991) found that the length of open riparian canopies along fourth- and fifth-order channels (class I) did not change appreciably from 1956-1979.

Open riparian canopies along first and second-order stream channels (class IV and III) increased 30-fold between 1956 and 1979, and were generally located along or near roaded or harvested sites. The greatest increase in openings was attributed to the 1964 storm. Overall, 73% of the landslides and all of the surface erosion were associated with roads or harvest. The Ryan and Grant (1991) analysis did not cover the effects of the 1955 flood. Additional measurements from the 1940 and 1956 aerial photographs would show the extent of riparian openings in small streams which results from stormflow under natural conditions.

Gravel bars were measured along the mainstem of Elk River on 1940-1986 aerial photos (Ryan and Grant 1991). The number of gravel bars increased by 77% overall. In the upper segment which is wider and lower gradient, gravel bars increased more in size than in number. In the lower segment which is narrower and steeper, a greater increase in the number of bars was observed. The most notable evidence of channel widening and an increase in the number and size of gravel bars occurred below the confluence with Purple Mountain Creek. This change can be attributed to sediment coming from Purple Mountain Creek following a period of poor timber harvest and road construction practices in the late 1950's-early 1960's.

There is increasing evidence that the 1955 flood had a greater effect on channel morphology than the 1964 flood for many coastal northern California and southern Oregon streams. The changes due to the 1955 flood may be attributed to decades without a major storm event. Aerial photography and oral history from Redwood Creek, California (Ricks 1985), Pistol River (oral communication), Shasta Costa Creek (Park 1990), and Elk River indicate that high flows eroded channel banks and riparian vegetation considerably. Interviews with Jim and Phyllis Woodward, long-time Elk River residents, indicate that substantial changes to the lower river morphology occurred as a result of the 1955 storm.

The adverse effects of the 1955 flood were probably heightened by the construction of the main access road (#5325) on the south side of Elk River in 1954. Comparison of aerial photos taken before and after this event shows that the road fill was placed within the portion of the stream channel subject to annual peak flows. This reduction in channel area confined the 1955 flood resulting in extensive scour of the north streambank and erosion of the road fill along the south. It is not known how much fill was lost from the road and deposited downstream in the lower-gradient channel below the National Forest boundary, but the amount was likely significant.

Below the National Forest boundary, comparisons of the Elk River channel from 1940-1986 aerial photos show increased numbers and sizes of gravel bars, loss of riparian forest, and increased widths of active channel bars (Ryan and Grant 1991). Where the channel is unconfined as it flows through the valley floor, the channel has shifted its location in some areas as much as 100 yards. In this low gradient valley floor, sediment was deposited changing pool geometry and frequency. Dramatic new flood plains were established. These changes in the lower valley were probably aided by the continual removal of streamside vegetation and large conifers during agricultural development. The observations are consistent with local accounts of decreased pool depths and increased bank erosion. Lifelong residents suggest that Elk River was too deep to cross in most places during the summer (G. Susac personal communication, interview with B. Marsh). Today most of the river is extremely shallow within the lower valley during low flow periods.

In 1994, landowners in Elk River formed the Elk River Watershed Council. The purpose of the council is for landowners to work in cooperative effort toward restoration of the watershed on private lands. The council works through a State grant program, personal donations and local volunteers to accomplish

restoration projects. Projects include riparian planting of trees and shrubs, fencing to exclude grazing in riparian zones, streambank stabilization, and fish habitat enhancement.

Effects of Stream Water Temperature and Streamflow on Fish

Water temperature is a determining factor in the composition and productivity of the aquatic ecosystem in streams. Increased temperatures favor the introduction and proliferation of "warm water" species (e.g. sticklebacks) to the detriment of "cold water" salmonid species found in Elk River.

Increases in water temperature also directly affect fish stress levels. Higher water temperatures reduce water oxygen capacity, and this, combined with metabolic demands associated with increased temperature, leads to greater stress on fish. Sustained temperatures above 70°F will result in mortality for anadromous salmonids. Availability of thermal refuges, such as cooler stratified layers in deep pools, tributaries or undergravel seeps, can partially compensate for such effects.

The present stream temperature of 68°F - 70°F on the mainstem at the forest boundary is less than optimum for fish survival and success. The stream temperature increases from 70°F to 75°F five miles below the Forest boundary. When under stress from water temperatures exceeding 70°F, fish populations may have reduced fitness, greater susceptibility to disease, decreased growth, and changes in time of migration/reproduction. Growth begins to decline and eventually ceases as the water temperature approaches the upper lethal temperature of 75°F for steelhead trout (Beschta et al. 1987).

The influence of natural variability in flow on fish in the Elk River have been documented (Reeves 1988). The spawning habitat accessible to migrating anadromous fish varies with the flow regime from year to year. For example, low flows during the fall drought of 1985 resulted in no chinook production in the upper river, because adults could not enter this part of the watershed. As a consequence, the fish spawned in the lower mainstem and juveniles had limited rearing habitat. A winter freshet in 1987 dislodged many of the eggs and resulted in high mortality and low juvenile populations the following year. Normally, higher fall/winter base flows ensure passage to smaller tributary streams which offer a refuge to egg and fry stages during large storms. Where structures like road culverts have limited juvenile migration, the effects of low flow spawning conditions are exacerbated.

At this time, no dams or other flow-regulating devices are present on the Elk within the upper reaches. At the fish hatchery there is a constructed rock weir in the mainstem to help sustain flow into the hatchery. Below the Forest boundary, continual water withdrawal by private landholders for agricultural purposes may affect summer survival of salmonids rearing in this portion of the watershed. This particularly impacts rearing conditions for coho salmon and limits the acclimation zone for all downstream migrants to the ocean.

Productive Flats

Low-gradient reaches with high fish productivity and diversity are known as "productive flats". They are considered barometers for watershed health. Monitoring activities should be concentrated on flats to detect watershed trends in temperature, sediment, large woody material and fish populations. The locations of these flats within Elk River are displayed in Map 27. Flats are associated with soft (weak) rocks along the mainstem and on the lower reaches of tributaries such as Red Cedar Creek, Panther Creek, and the North Fork Elk River (Map 4). In the portion of Elk River above the hatchery, approximately 20% of the stream reaches have low-gradients and are relatively unconfined. These reaches are long-term sites of sediment deposition (McHugh 1987).

Reeves (1988) found that a number of flats support diverse populations of salmonids and account for a high percentage of the fish standing crop. Flats are sensitive to increased sediment and temperature, and decreased large wood supply.

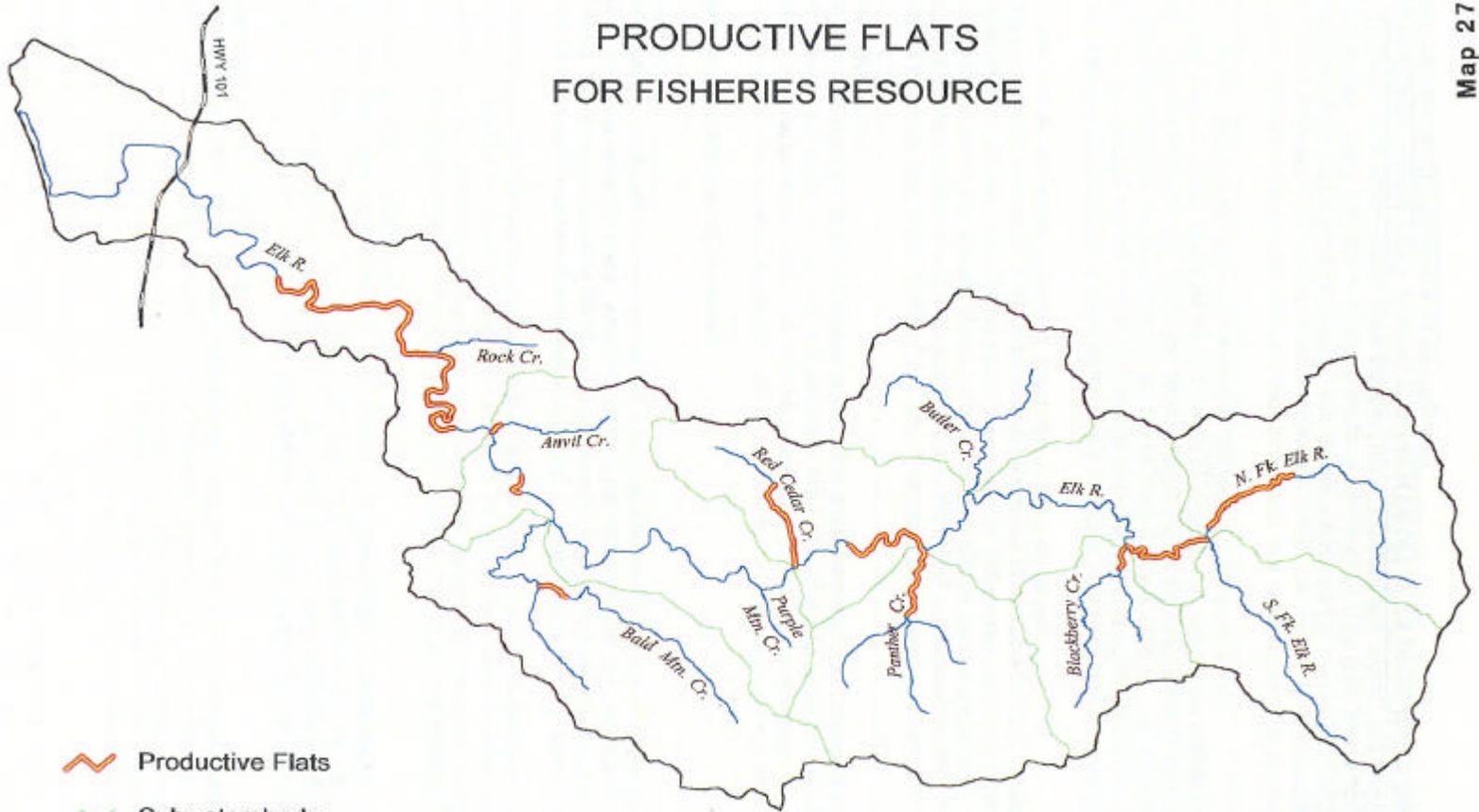
Flats support a wide variety of habitat types. Sediment is stored in broad floodplains and river terraces within the wide valley floor. The channel often splits around vegetated islands or large wood jams, increasing the number of habitat units and total habitat area. Riparian vegetation provides organic

PRODUCTIVE FLATS FOR FISHERIES RESOURCE

Map 27

Elk River - 85

-  Productive Flats
-  Subwatersheds
-  Streams



matter, nutrient storage, and low velocity areas, increasing levels of biological activity. Accumulations of large wood create complex habitat, scour pools, and provide abundant cover. Deep pools appear to be the major factor in supporting high fish densities and species diversity.

The variety of habitat types support a diverse assemblage of aquatic organisms. Low-velocity riffles and side channels are favored by post-emergent fry. Pools support a mixture of coho, chinook, steelhead fry and yearlings, and older age cutthroat trout. Different species and age classes occupy specific areas within the pools, thereby decreasing competition among species. Shallow riffles are occupied by young-of-the-year trout and are sources of aquatic invertebrate drift forage. Higher-velocity, deeper riffles are used by yearling and older-age trout.

Winter habitat during high flows is crucial for salmonid species that reside in freshwater for more than one year, (i.e. coho salmon, steelhead, cutthroat trout, and resident trout). Well-vegetated floodplains disperse flow laterally and reduce velocities during high flow. Large wood, live vegetation, and split channels create quiet-water refuge habitat for juvenile salmonids. These factors minimize energy expenditures and, therefore increase winter survival.

Floodplain and river terrace vegetation provide organic matter. These nutrients become available to invertebrates within the channel following high flows which inundate the flats. At lower flows, organic matter trapped in low-gradient areas is available to instream organisms. Slower water velocities allow soluble aquatic nutrients to be retained longer for use by primary producers and secondary consumers.

Hyporheic zones (underground seeps) have been found along a number of the flats in Elk River (Gregory and Lombardi, unpublished). Instream productivity is enhanced by subsurface biological activity along unconfined reaches in hyporheic zones. Microbes fix carbon beneath apparently "dry" gravel bars. Intergravel flow carries nutrients from the microbes and from nitrogen-fixing alder root nodules to the stream channel.

Fish Habitat, Distribution, and Populations

Salmonid production can be viewed as the end product of energy that is routed through the stream ecosystem. Since land managers have no control over ocean conditions, this document will focus on the physical, chemical and biological components of freshwater systems. A significant cause of salmonid declines have been attributed to the degradation of freshwater and estuarine habitats (Spence et al. 1996 and FEMAT 1993).

All species of salmonids need quality spawning and rearing habitats. Temperature, cover, barriers, nutrient inputs, stream velocities and flow can limit distribution and density in freshwater habitats. Quality habitat components include cool summer stream temperatures (less than 64 degrees Fahrenheit), oxygenated water, deep pools, intact riparian zones, cover elements, large woody material, suitable substrates for spawning and access to refuge areas during floods and escape from predators. When these components become limited or stressed, salmonid production will decline.

Watershed salmonid fish production is driven largely by the production in tributary streams. Tributaries are particularly important for species such as coho salmon and steelhead trout whose life histories have evolved to avoid competition with other salmonid species by utilizing smaller streams. Tributaries serve as refuge for juvenile salmonids during high flow periods; young fish escape winter floods by seeking out protected side streams. Larger tributaries are also utilized by predominantly mainstream species such as chinook salmon, and thus add to the total watershed populations of these fish as well.

The Elk River supports one of the most important and valuable wild runs of anadromous fish in coastal Oregon. Factors attributed to this include the remarkable water quality, the relatively undeveloped and undisturbed watershed and the advanced hatchery and species management by the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife. Today, the major anadromous salmonid species found in Elk River are chinook salmon (*Onchorhynchus tshawytscha*), winter steelhead trout (*Onchorhynchus mykiss*), and sea-run cutthroat

trout (*Onchorhynchus clarki*). However, at the turn of the century, the primary species may have been coho salmon (*Onchorhynchus kisutch*) (Figure 2).

The Elk River valley was one of the last areas to be settled along the Oregon Coast. A number of long-time residents interviewed stated that local residents preferred to fish the nearby Sixes River, instead of the Elk, because the Sixes had a substantial run of larger chinook salmon, whereas in the Elk, mostly coho salmon were caught. The lower river was well suited for coho salmon: heavily wooded with spruce and hardwoods, and having multiple channels, slow backwater pools, and numerous log jams.

Dramatic changes in habitat, particularly in the lower watershed, may have been a major cause for the change in dominant fish species from coho to chinook salmon. During the latter part of the 19th century, much of the lower mainstem was believed to be low lying swamp land. Decades of settlement and associated activities have altered this landscape considerably. The key habitat elements which are important for coho salmon no longer exist in the lower Elk. A combination of activities has contributed to these habitat changes. These activities include removal of in-channel wood due to log rafting operations, periodic clearing of wood to maintain drift boat fishing access, increased bedload sediment from upstream sources (generated by harvest and road-related landslides, and large natural storm events), draining, filling and channelizing of riparian areas to increase agricultural production, harvest of riparian vegetation, and similar riparian loss due to bank stabilization projects. At present, habitat conditions now favor chinook salmon and steelhead trout production.

Depletion of Pacific salmon stocks have been well documented (Ebel et al. 1989, Nehlsen et al. 1991, and Huntington et al. 1996). Many factors have been attributed to this decline including over exploitation, dams, disease, natural predation, artificial propagation, climatic variations and the destruction and alteration of habitat. Habitat loss and modification are believed to be the major factors determining the current status of salmonid populations (FEMAT, 1993). Elk River stocks of salmonids have not experienced the major habitat alterations that other coastal basins have received, and therefore, current populations are more robust than in other areas. With the exception of coho salmon, Elk River salmonid stocks are relatively stable. The potential for salmonid recovery in the Elk River is high. Management emphasis should be on preventing rather than mitigating damage to freshwater habitats. Current Federal, State and Regional status listing of Elk River stocks are displayed in Figure 20.

Figure 20: Status of Elk River Salmonid Stocks

Species	ESA Federal Listing	Oregon State Listing	USDA Region 6 Sensitive
Coho salmon	Threatened	Critical	Sensitive
Chinook salmon	Review	None	Sensitive
Winter steelhead	Proposed	None	None
Cutthroat trout	Review	None	Sensitive
Chum salmon	Review	Critical*	Sensitive

* The ODFW does not acknowledge Elk River chum salmon as a viable remnant population.

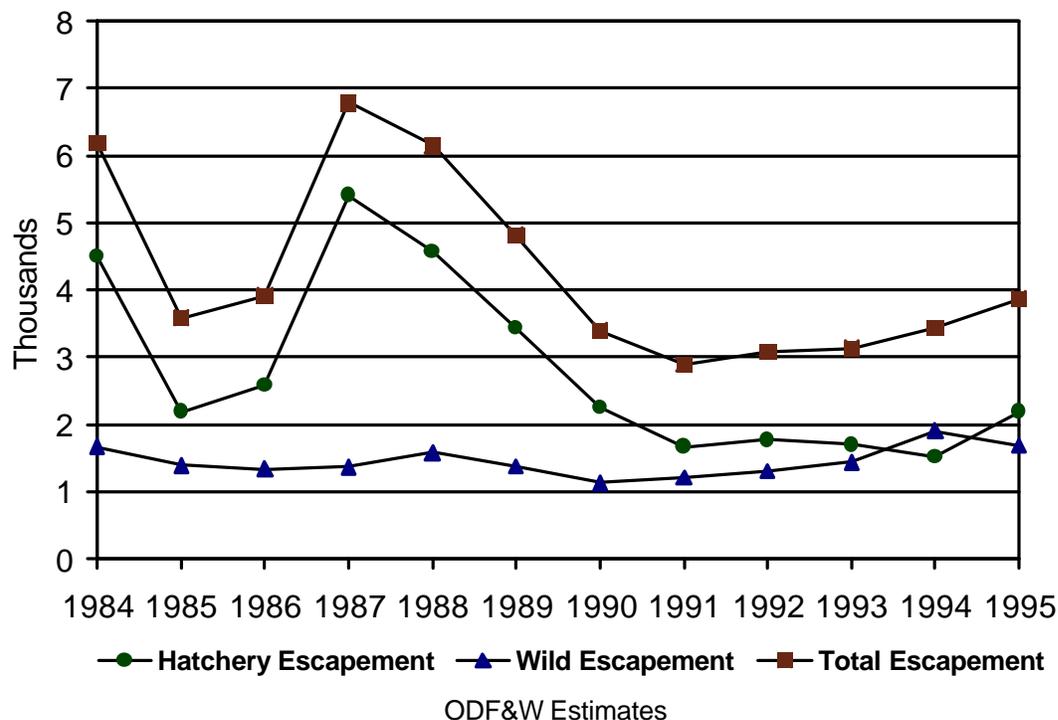
Chum: The Elk River is near the southern extent of the range for chum salmon. For this reason, it is hypothesized the Elk River never supported large numbers of chum salmon. However, the 1927 commercial catch records for the lower Elk indicate approximately 187 chum salmon were caught (Figure 2). Recent yearly spawning surveys conducted by the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife have indicated minor numbers of chum salmon spawning in the lower mainstem (Susac 1997, personal communication). Since most chum salmon spawn in the lower reaches of streams (frequently within the tidal zone) and immediately migrate to the ocean after emergence, it is difficult to determine escapement and smolt output trends.

Chinook: Elk River chinook are an indicator stock for the ODFW's Ocean Salmon Management Department. Indicator stocks are used to index adult populations on Southern Oregon north migrating chinook by extrapolating data from a few rivers. Therefore, monitoring Elk River populations are a key component for setting ocean harvest limits. Of the 315,000 smolts released (yearly average) by the hatchery, 220,000 are fin marked and fitted with a coded wire tag. This information is used to determine

and document age classes, ocean mortality, ocean and sport harvest levels, run returns, escapement, stray rates and wild to hatchery ratios on the spawning grounds. In addition to the coded wire tags, ODFW conducts spawning surveys on 18 miles of streams in the watershed, conducts creel surveys (estimating sport catch) and operates two smolt traps. This data is a critical component for monitoring long term trends within the population. Due to State and Federal budget cuts, sharing resources and personnel by utilizing Challenge Cost Share agreements should be pursued in order to continue this vital data collection.

For a watershed of its size, the Elk River is one of the highest producers of chinook salmon in the Pacific Northwest. The number of chinook produced from the upper reaches varies annually but is estimated at about 40% of the total system production. When only wild fish are considered, the upper reaches account for up to 80% of total wild fish production. This illustrates the importance of the upper mainstem for wild chinook production. Fluctuations in this production are primarily due to variations in flow during the fall/winter months (low flow limits access to the upper watershed and forces chinook to spawn in the mainstem below the hatchery), and sport/commercial fishery escapement (Reeves, 1989). Wild to hatchery ratios and escapement levels from 1984 to 1995 are illustrated in Figure 21.

Figure 21: Elk River Chinook Escapement 1984-1995



Chinook salmon utilize the 17 miles of the upper mainstem, the lower two miles of the North Fork Elk, 1.5 miles of Red Cedar Creek, two miles of Panther Creek, 0.5 miles of Anvil Creek, and approximately 1.5 miles of Butler Creek. Contribution from non-designated tributaries is estimated at 20 - 30% of the upper watershed chinook production (Susac, personal communication; unpublished ODFW data). A total of 24.5 miles in the upper and 10 miles of the lower watershed are utilized by chinook for both spawning and rearing.

Nicholas and Hankin (1988) describe the extended freshwater residency of juvenile chinook in the upper Elk River as an unusual occurrence for coastal Oregon stocks. This may be due in part to the presence of favorable water temperatures in the upper river, as well as the lack of a large estuary at the mouth. In most other systems, juveniles spend considerable time in the estuary, growing to the larger sizes that favor ocean survival.

Adult Elk River chinook salmon are characteristically three and four-year old fish which return primarily from November through January. This is a departure from many other coastal stocks, most of which return earlier in the fall. It is thought that the delay in adult spawning migration is an environmental adaptation to low-water conditions which persist on the southern Oregon coast during the fall months. The Elk also appears to be the southern boundary between north-migrating and south-migrating coastal chinook stocks (Nicolas and Hankin 1988).

Of concern in any watershed that contains mixed populations of native and hatchery salmonids are the potential effects on wild fish stocks resulting from hatchery supplementation. Spawning ground surveys conducted by ODFW indicate some cross breeding between wild and hatchery chinook (Figure 22). However, these figures are averages and some segregation does occur. As a general rule, higher concentrations of hatchery fish spawn in the lower mainstem (below the fish hatchery) and higher concentrations of wild fish spawn above the hatchery. Data from 1980 to 1993 indicate Elk River wild chinook populations tend to have a greater proportion of age 5 and 6 year old fish and less jacks (precocious males) than their hatchery counterparts (ODFW records). Long-term hatchery programs have been shown to alter stock characteristics of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest (Spence et al. 1996). In many watersheds today, fisheries scientists are attempting to rectify such problems and protect remaining stocks of wild fish.

Figure 22: Mainstem Elk, Spawning ground surveys, Wild to hatchery carcass ratios, 1988 - 1993.

Year	Wild	Hatchery
1988	69%	31%
1989	77%	23%
1990	74%	26%
1991	76%	24%
1992	65%	35%
1993	50%	50%

Chinook smolts typically migrate to the ocean from May through October. The State of Oregon's Department of Fish and Wildlife has operated a chinook salmon hatchery in the Elk River since 1968. Even before construction of the hatchery, far-sighted ODFW managers and scientists began to address the importance of understanding the characteristics of wild stocks, in particular, the value of genetic variability found in native fish. An intensive and unique research program was begun in the mid-1960's to study the life history of Elk River fall chinook salmon. Research results were instrumental in the development of the chinook hatchery program. Only Elk River fish were used for the broodstock program, a significant departure from other programs which used a single non-native stock to supplement a number of watersheds. Breeding followed a complex series of matings to maintain the genetic variability discovered in the life history research. Today, Elk River fall chinook stocks are healthy and its hatchery program is perhaps the best example in the Pacific Northwest of balancing supplementation while protecting wild stock integrity.

Steelhead: The Elk River steelhead are currently being reviewed for a listing of "Threatened" under the Endangered Species Act (1973). A decision from the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) regarding the proposed listing is required by February 9th, 1998. Juvenile steelhead trout production within the upper reaches and tributaries accounts for an estimated 70-80% of all steelhead produced in the system (Reeves, unpublished data). Steelhead trout have the most ubiquitous distribution among the anadromous species; usage (by stream) include 2 miles on the North Fork, 0.5 miles on the South Fork, 2 miles of Butler Creek, 4.5 miles of Panther Creek, 5 miles of Bald Mountain Creek, 1 mile of Blackberry Creek, 1 mile in Anvil Creek, 1.5 miles of Red Cedar Creek, and a total of 1.5 miles in Slate, Sunshine, and Purple Mountain Creeks, as well as the 17 miles of the mainstem. One year, densities in the North Fork were estimated to be over 4,000 fish/1000 meters (PNW unpublished data). Total miles used within the upper watershed is 36.0.

A high percentage of extended-residence juvenile steelhead have been noted by ODFW researchers in the Elk River watershed. Typically, in most coastal systems, the majority of outmigrant steelhead smolts are 2 years old. Trap data indicates that 20-25% of Elk River steelhead do not smolt until 3 years in age (Susac unpublished data).

Cutthroat and Coho: On May 6th, 1997, NMFS declared Elk River stocks of coho salmon “Threatened” under the Endangered Species Act (1973). Current coho escapement levels have been estimated to be approximately 100 to 200 fish (Susac 1997, personal communication). Considering the 1927 commercial catch records (Figure 2) coho numbers are significantly depressed from historic levels. Protecting existing habitat is of critical importance for the viability of Elk River coho stocks. Restoring historical coho habitat, particularly in the lower mainstem, will be vital if recovery efforts are to be successful.

Sea-run cutthroat trout and coho salmon occur in various places and densities within the upper reaches of Elk River. Anadromous cutthroat have been found in all areas occupied by steelhead trout juveniles (36.0 total miles). Summer low-flow surveys by PNW and District crews have found that cutthroat may be relatively abundant (up to 30 per pool) and large in size (exceeding 24 inches in length). Very little quantifiable data exist on searun cutthroat populations within the Elk River. Coho salmon have been found primarily in the North Fork (Wild River segment), Red Cedar Creek, and Anvil Creek. The 1985 surveys conducted by PNW estimated that coho densities were as high as 0.61 fish/m² in the North Fork (Reeves 1987). During that year, coho were present in nearly all tributaries in the upper river. However, in subsequent years, coho densities have been much lower. Tributaries important for coho production are Red Cedar, the North Fork, Panther and Anvil creeks (Reeves et al. Unpublished data). These tributaries appear to account for most of the present coho production in the entire watershed.

Resident Fish: ODFW biologists have identified Elk River as one of the few coastal watersheds with remnant populations of non-anadromous rainbow trout (Reimers, personal communication). They are estimated to populate 27 miles within the mainstem Elk, the lower North Fork and the upper North Fork. Entirely pure resident rainbow populations exist above barriers on the North Fork, South Fork, Butler Creek and Bald Mountain Creek (Susac 1997, personal communication). Resident cutthroat are estimated to occupy 40 miles, including the mainstem areas and pure populations above barriers on Rock Creek, Anvil Creek and China Creek (Susac 1997, personal communication).

Clean Water Act Section 303(d)

The 1972 Clean Water Act requires each state to identify streams, rivers, lakes and estuaries (waterbodies) that do not meet water quality standards. Stream segments where data show standards are not met are referred to as “water quality limited” and placed on the 303 (d) list. The 1994/1996 Clean Water Act Section 303 (d) list found the following segments water quality limited:

Figure 23: Segments identified as Water Quality Limited

Name	Segment	Parameter
Elk River	Mouth to Anvil Creek	Habitat Modifications
	Mouth to North/South Conflu	Temperature - Summer
Bald Mountain Creek	Mouth to RM 2	Habitat Modification
		Temperature - Summer
Butler Creek	Mouth to Headwaters	Habitat Modification
	Mouth to RM 1.25	Temperature - Summer

Habitat Modification: Documented habitat conditions that are a significant limitation to fish or other aquatic life. Habitat conditions considered are represented by data that relate to channel morphology or in-stream habitat such as large woody material.

Temperature - Summer: The seven (7) day moving average of daily maximum temperature shall not exceed 64 degrees Fahrenheit.

November 18 & 19, 1996 Flood

On November 18, 1996, Elk River experienced a storm of major magnitude. The storm had a return interval of between a 50 and 75 year event (Map 28). It is characterized as a storm of high intensity and short duration. The majority of the rainfall occurred in a single day on November 19 (NOAA). It had the same magnitude as the 1955 storm which caused severe disturbance in the watershed (refer to Channel Morphology section). Only a limited amount of information on the flood effects is available for this iteration of the Elk River Watershed Analysis. When the collection of information on the flood is complete, the Watershed Analysis will be updated.

A USGS stream gage is located at the fish hatchery. The stage height reached at peak flow during the storm was 22.6 feet. The stream gage was damaged sometime before peak flow, so peak flow information is not available at this time.

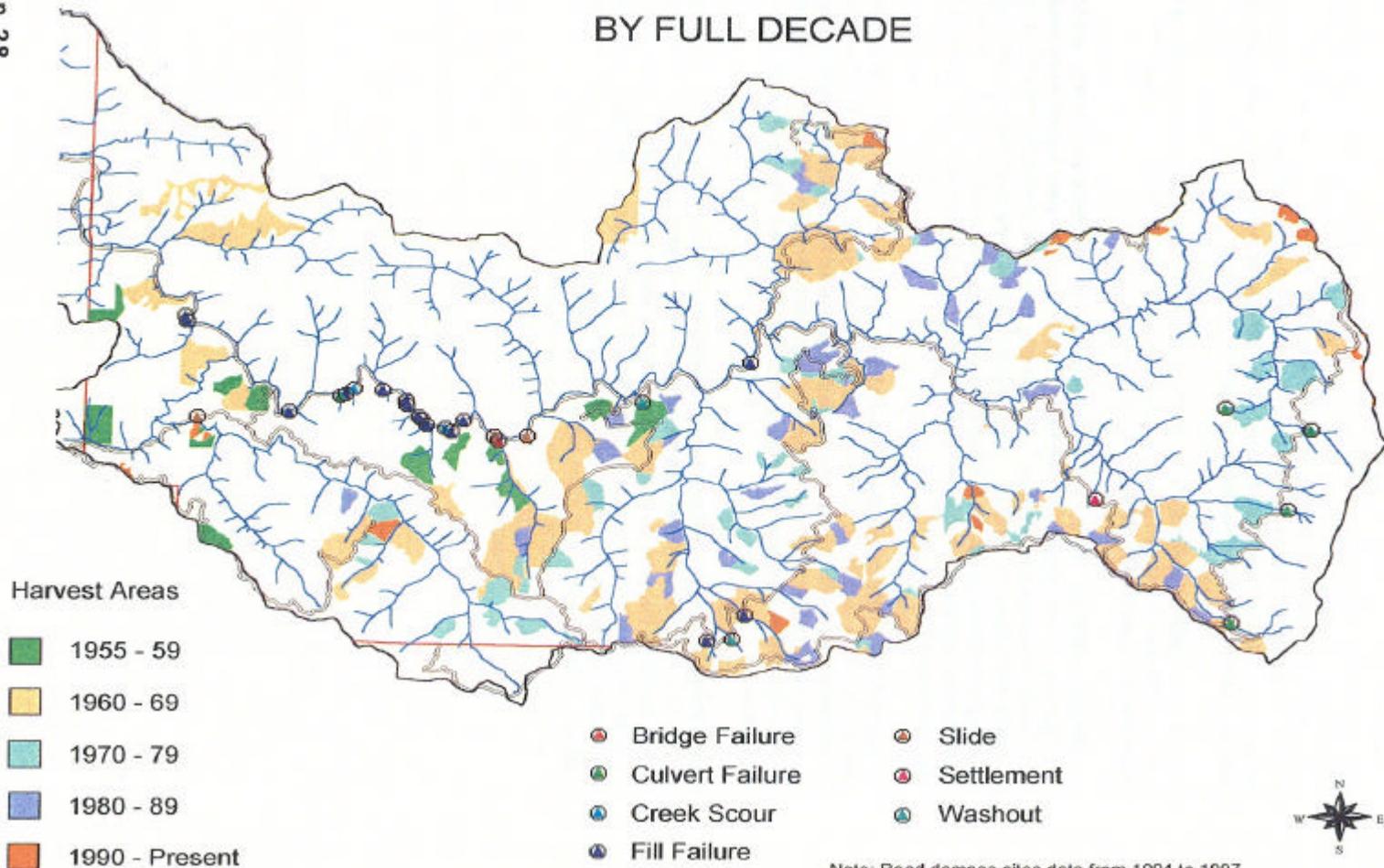
The damage to the stream channel and riparian vegetation in the watershed is similar to what occurred in 1955, but not as severe. The main access road (#5325) built in 1954, which placed road fill material within the flood prone area of the stream, experienced extensive fill failure during the 1955 storm. Road fill material that remained in the flood prone area continue to fail in the 1996 storm, but with less material remaining, the overall loss was not as great. Continued improvements in the road as the failures are repaired should significantly reduce the likelihood of road failure in the future, when a storm of this magnitude occurs again.

The two factors that have increased summer stream temperature in Elk River are loss of stream shade trees and excessive sediment in the channels causing them to become wider and shallower. The summer stream temperature in Elk River has been decreasing for the last two decades as trees that shade the stream lost in the 1955 and 1964 storm, and from timber harvest recover. The channel is also recovering from the large amount of sediment in the stream from that time period, helping to reduce stream temperature.

Many of the trees lost in the 1996 storm were hardwood and immature conifers that were growing back from the 1955 and 1964 storm. Because these trees were too short to provide significant stream shade to the wide mainstem, there may be little effect in increasing stream temperature. How much sediment was introduced into the stream from the storm and how it has effected the channel shape in not known at this time. Sediment plays a key role in how much, if any, summer stream temperature will increase from the 1996 storm in Elk River.

Map 28

FLOOD DAMAGE SITES AND TIMBER HARVEST AREAS BY FULL DECADE



Note: Road damage sites date from 1994 to 1997



AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM - Subwatershed Level

Some components of the aquatic ecosystem are best examined in finer detail by subwatershed. This section examines each subwatershed, describing its respective condition and unique characteristics.

- Landslides and Surface Erosion
- Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem
- Channel Condition
- Fish Habitat, Distribution and Populations
- Subwatersheds
 - North Fork Elk River
 - Panther Creek
 - Bald Mountain Creek
 - Butler Creek
 - Blackberry Creek
 - South Fork Elk River
 - Smaller Tributaries

Tributaries help to maintain overall watershed fish production by distributing the effects of catastrophic, large-scale natural events. Natural events can affect different areas in the watershed at different times, and produce a mosaic of productivity with subwatersheds at various stages of recovery. Existing conditions are a product of past natural and human-caused events.

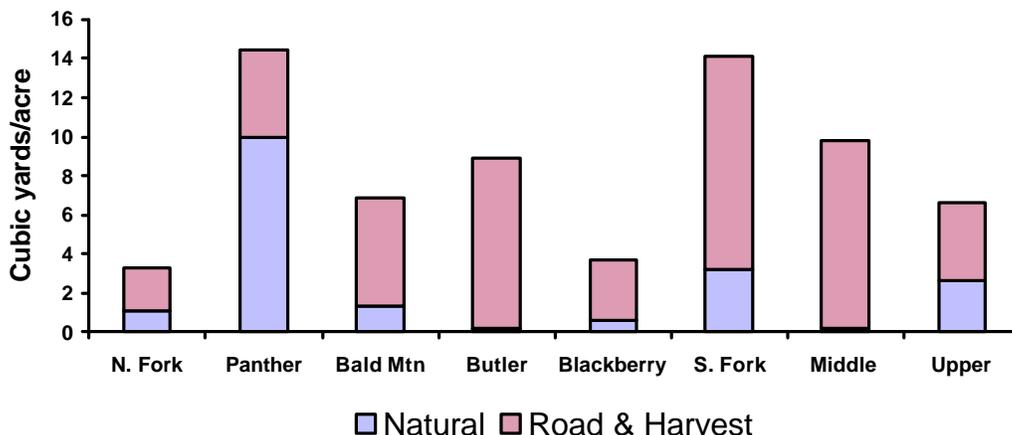
Data on existing conditions of landslide sediment yield, large wood supply, channel conditions, salmonid fish habitat, and salmonid fish species are summarized in the following subwatershed tables. Following the subwatershed tables, these data are integrated into the narrative descriptions of cause and effect for each subwatershed.

Landslides and Surface Erosion

Landslide sediment yield varies among the subwatersheds due to inherent slope stability and land use history. The total volume of delivered sediment has been divided by the area of the subwatershed to allow meaningful comparisons (Figure 24, except for Lower Elk with no data available. High yield areas may be concentrated within a single landslide (e.g. a large natural slide in the east fork of Panther Creek), or distributed across part of the watershed (e.g. harvest slides in the east fork of Butler Creek). Map 25 indicates the areas of greatest road and harvest disturbance. Within the Middle Area, sediment yield from road construction on high watershed sensitivity lands is concentrated in Purple Mountain Creek.

Where timing of landslide sediment delivery is relevant to current channel conditions and recovery rates, it is discussed in the narrative descriptions of the subwatersheds.

Figure 24: Landslide Sediment Yield for Elk River Subwatersheds, 1952-1986.

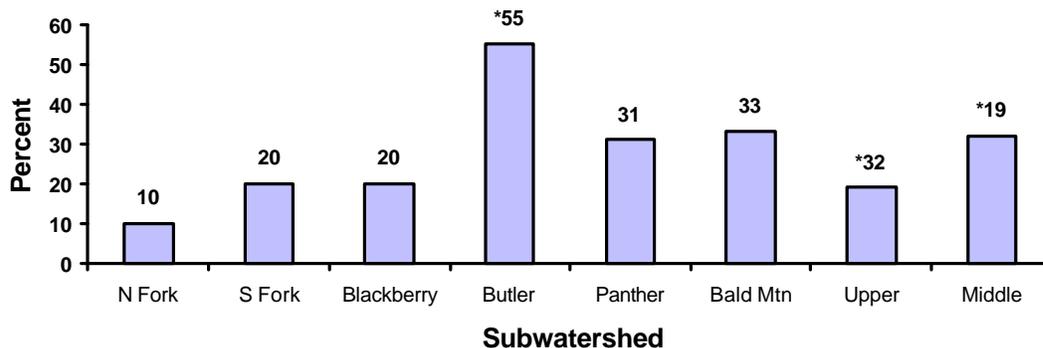


Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem

The area mapped as high watershed sensitivity (Map 24) is a reasonable approximation of the area which can supply large wood to stream channels. Figure 25 gives the percentage of the area mapped as high watershed sensitivity which has been harvested. Some of these stands are now composed of hardwoods and will not provide large wood to channels until replaced by conifers.

Figure 25: Large Wood Supply, Percent Harvested from High Watershed Sensitivity Area

*Data for the portion of the subwatershed outside Grassy Knob Wilderness.



Channel Condition

Comparison of channel surveys, channel changes in historical aerial photographs, estimates of sediment delivery and the channel capacity to transport sediment indicate how the channel has responded to natural and human disturbance. Figure 26 summarizes those findings. Stream temperature can be affected by both removal of shade trees and excessive sediment loading which can cause the channel width to increase and depth to decrease.

Figure 26: Summary of Channel Condition by Subwatershed

	N Fork	Panther	Bald Mt	Butler	Blkbry	S Fork	Middle	Upper
Past Channel Effects From Sediment	Low	Mod	High	High	Low	Mod	High	Mod
Stream Temperature	Low	Mod	Mod	Mod/High	Low	Low	Low	Low
Drainage Area Acres	6107	5790	6788	4380	2985	4943	7321	8810
% gradient at Critical Reach	1.2	1.0*	0.8	0.8	2.0	0.8	NA	NA**

* Critical Reach is at Panther Forks, lower Panther gradient is 2.5%

** Red Cedar Creek gradient is 1.0%

Fish Habitat, Distribution and Populations

Watershed habitat and population data were generated from various stream surveys to interpret the resource values for watershed salmonid habitat. These surveys include those conducted by USFS PNW under the direction of Dr. Gordon Reeves (1985-1991) and are augmented by data from surveys conducted by the Powers Ranger District (1988-1991), which used increased sampling for fish (more time periods for sampling and more units sampled per effort). Figure 27 displays the factors used to develop these values. Values for Population Size, Contribution to Elk River, Habitat Ranking and Habitat Value are subjective. They were derived from professional judgement of District Fisheries Biologist utilizing data from the aforementioned surveys.

Figure 27: Assessment of Resource Value for Subwatershed Salmonid Habitat

Tributary Watershed	Miles avail	Fish Information			Current Habitat Conditions @ Low-Gradient Reach								HABITAT VALUE
		Anad Species Present	Pop'n size	Contrib. To Elk River	P:R Ratio**	# pools	Large wood/pool	% pools >3' deep	Reach length (miles)	Winter habitat	Habitat Ranking		
North Fork (to falls, 2 mi)	2	coho chinook steelhead cutthroat res trout	high high high high high*	high high high high high	0.73	44	(54/44)= 1.22	50%	1.25	exc	#1	HIGH	
Panther Cr. (Incl. 3 forks)	5	coho chinook steelhead cutthroat res trout	mod* mod high mod mod*	mod high high high mod	0.68	18	(32/18)= 0.56	44%	1.00	exc	#2	HIGH	
Bald Mt Creek (mainstem to falls)	7	coho chinook steelhead cutthroat res trout	low* low* high mod high	mod mod high mod high	0.64	77	(77/59)= 1.31	39%	0.50	exc	#4	MODERATE	
Butler Cr (to forks)	2	coho chinook steelhead cutthroat res trout	mod low mod low low*	mod low mod low low	0.94	8	(6/8)= 0.75	13%	0.25	poor	#7	LOW	
Blackberry Cr (above forks)	2	steelhead cutthroat res trout	mod low low	mod low low	0.50	4	(4/3) 1.33		0.75	fair	#3	MODERATE	
South Fork (to Laird Lake side)	1.5	coho chinook steelhead cutthroat res trout	low low mod low mod*	low low mod low mod	0.30	33	(19/33)= 0.56	33%	0.50	fair	#5	MODERATE	
Lower Mainstem	14	coho chinook chum steelhead cutthroat res trout	low* high low* mod low low	low high high mod low low	0.67	63	2.3	n/a	n/a	exc	#6	MODERATE	
Middle face drainages	2.5	steelhead* cutthroat	low mod	low mod	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	0.50	poor	#8	LOW	
Upper face drainages	1	steelhead cutthroat	low low	low low	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	0.25	poor	#9	LOW	

* Historically present in greater abundance

**P:R, Pool to Riffle ratio

n/a = data not available

With the exception of young of the year steelhead in the mainstem, Elk River salmonids show a strong correlation (or preference) to rear in pool type habitats (Burnett 1997, unpublished data). Figure 28 displays by subwatersheds the average salmonid pool densities per square meter from 1988 to 1994 (Burnett 1997, unpublished data.). These numbers are calculated means over seven years and many variables exist. Fish habitat diversity and stream carrying capacities for salmonids are positively correlated with the frequency of high quality pools, therefore any reduction in pool depth or area would correspondingly reduce salmonid rearing potential (FEMAT 1993). Increased sedimentation from land management activities have been attributed to decreasing pool depths (Spence et al. 1996, FEMAT 1993, and Meehan 1991). Future management actions need to take measures to avoid, minimize or restore potential sediment sources.

Figure 28: Mean pool densities of salmonids per square meter in Elk River Subwatersheds from 1988 to 1994.

Subwatershed	Chinook*	Coho	1+ steelhead	Trout**	Cutthroat
Upper Mainstem	.067	.003	.082	.544	.006
Middle Mainstem	.180	.002	.099	.234	.004
Lower Mainstem	.216	.003	.029	.241	.001
North Fork	.026	.009	.113	.807	.008
South Fork	.000	<.001	.120	.759	.001
Butler	.001	.014	.036	.958	.002
Panther	.006	<.001	.063	.596	.007
Red Cedar	.023	.016	.035	.407	.020
Bald Mountain	.002	.002	.157	.565	.012
Anvil	.012	.221	.080	.541	.019

Data courtesy of Kelly Burnett

* Surveys done in August: Most chinook have migrated to salt water.

** Trout include steelhead, cutthroat and resident trout young of the year.

North Fork Elk River

The North Fork begins at approximately river mile 30. McHugh (1987) observed that the lower North Fork flows through an unconfined channel formed within a fold in the bedrock of the Rocky Point Formation. Large, ancient dip-slope failures have delivered debris to the wide axis of the fold. Sediment deposits form multiple terraces up to 10 meters (33 feet) above the current stream surface. The highest terraces may correspond to tectonically elevated Pleistocene marine terraces located 30 kilometers (19 miles) to the west. Extensive wildfire in the watershed has created even-age (80-90 years) stands; however, charred old-growth snags were noted on the terraces suggesting the higher terraces are more than several centuries old. Stream constrictions and related large wood accumulations are formed by reworked deposits from the ancient failures, or where more resistant rock types are exposed in the channel.

The earliest aerial photos show extensive areas of open canopy with multiple large wood jams and aggraded reaches. Historical aerial photos and stream deposits provide evidence that the North Fork has been subjected to numerous debris flows. Thick deposits exposed from downcutting of the stream occurred prior to 1910. Thick deposits exposed from downcutting of the stream have been dated as pre-1910. This large volume of sediment may have been deposited from transport of debris flows triggered by storms in the 1890's, following fires in 1868. These debris flows may have contributed to today's highly productive habitat by providing a source of wood for habitat structure and nutrients. The sediment fans at the mouths of the tributaries are chronic sediment sources for the North Fork.

Immediately upstream of the Rocky Point Formation (Map 5), the channel flows through Humbug Mountain Conglomerate, where it develops a steep gradient that is a barrier to anadromous fish (this includes the falls). Above the steep reach, more gentle hillslopes are underlain by Galice Formation.

Sediment quantities that exceed the stream channel's capacity to transport sediment can cause changes in channel geometry and streambed composition. Sediment from landslides related to roads and harvest primarily in 1970-72, has aggraded the stream channel of the upper reach. It is unknown how much of the sediment may have been transported through to the fish habitat of the lower North Fork.

Figure 29 estimates the lower North Fork's sediment transport capacity relative to sediment delivered from both natural and land use practices. Sediment delivery values used in the analysis may be an overestimate, since a proportion of the sediment delivered to the upper reach remains in storage. The sediment transport capacity of the lower North Fork was only exceeded for a brief period in the early

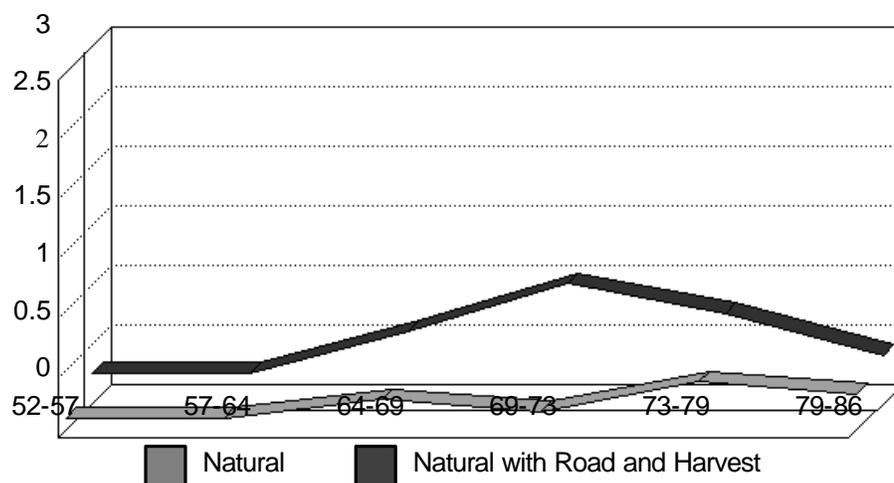
1970's. Based on these findings, it is speculated that land use practices have not adversely affected the lower reach. This is consistent with field observations which show the lower channel to be in excellent condition (Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis).

Summer stream temperature in the North Fork is excellent, with maximum temperatures in the low 60° F.

The North Fork contains high quality salmonid fish habitat, and all salmonid species (except chum salmon) indigenous to the watershed are present in high numbers. The unconfined stream reach in the lower two miles (Map 27) is accessible to anadromous fish and exhibits all of the benefits to aquatic diversity associated with productive flats. This reach is particularly important for chinook and coho salmon production and winter steelhead rearing.

Figure 29: North Fork Elk River Channel Response to Sediment

Ratios greater than 1.0 indicate sediment supply exceeds stream transport capacity. Ratios greater than 1.5 indicate significant effects on channel morphology.



South Fork Elk River

The South Fork Elk River begins at approximately river mile 30. In the South Fork, a large earthflow constricts the channel, providing a barrier to fish migration approximately one mile upstream from the mouth of the creek. The extensively aggraded reaches above this constriction are due to sedimentation from both natural sources such as the debris flow from the south side of Copper Mountain, and the intensive road and harvest disturbance in the subwatershed during 1964-69 (Map 25).

The earthflow deflects the South Fork channel from approximately ~~to~~ one mile above the confluence with the mainstem. Sediment is delivered to the channel along the earthflow's active marginal gullies. This source of sediment will occasionally affect water clarity on the lower South Fork and upper mainstem of the Elk River.

The South Fork is exceptionally cool with summer peaks reaching only 57.4°F. The stream runs subsurface during the summer, through the aggraded reach, so it is not exposed to solar heating. This accounts for the unusually cool temperature.

The South Fork Elk River contains moderate numbers of steelhead and resident trout, with occasional presence of chinook and coho salmon. The south fork is an example where increases in sediment from both natural and management actions tend to favor steelhead production. Habitat is limited to the lower mile

of the creek and nearly all steelhead rear in the lowest quarter-mile of this stream. The anadromous fish use is extremely limited due to steep gradients and numerous barriers. The contribution to Elk River steelhead population is rated as moderate.

Blackberry Creek

Blackberry Creek is a southern tributary located at approximately river mile 28. Blackberry Creek has two branches, known as the east and west forks. The effects of past road- and harvest-related disturbance in the upper east fork of Blackberry Creek are not evident in the stream reaches utilized by anadromous fish (particularly below the forks). There is little evidence of excessive coarse sediment aggradation or channel instability (the stream substrate is composed primarily of large rocks or boulders, with abundant growths of moss). Large wood is abundant, stable, and of natural origin. Streambanks along these reaches are also stable, much of it being composed of bedrock walls. Riparian areas are intact, with large alders, big leaf maple, and Douglas-fir providing 85-95 percent shading. The stream temperature is good ranging from the mid 50° F in the upper reaches to the 60°F at the mouth.

Stream surveys (USDA 1984) indicate that the only anadromous fish species which rear in Blackberry Creek are the steelhead trout and searun cutthroat. ODFW surveys have found few or no chinook salmon using Blackberry Creek as a spawning site (Susac, personal communication). The primary use by steelhead appears to be in the reach below the forks (stream mile 0.0 to 0.5). Anadromous fish access may have been restricted in the past by the culvert under Forest Service Road 5325. In 1985, fish passage was improved by installing weirs in the culvert to lower flow velocity and by raising the outlet pool to reduce the jump height. In 1998, two more weirs are going to be installed to improve access to the culvert pool. The restoration project will provide 1.5 miles of juvenile access to Blackberry Creek during high winter flows. It may also allow chinook and coho to utilize the portion below the forks. It will be important to monitor the results of this project to see if project objectives are being met. Blackberry Creek is considered of moderate importance to the Elk River steelhead population. Approximately one and a half miles are accessible to anadromy.

Butler Creek

Butler Creek is a northern tributary entering Elk River at approximately river mile 24. The west half of the Butler Creek watershed is within the Grassy Knob Wilderness. Butler Creek is underlain by steep slopes of the Humbug Mountain Conglomerate and Rocky Point Formations. Debris chutes deliver sediment containing the rounded gravels that are preferred for spawning substrate into Butler Creek and into the mainstem Elk River.

One of the most intense disturbances in the Elk River watershed occurred in the lower east fork of Butler Creek in 1961 (Map 25). Within a single harvest unit of 330 acres, trees were clearcut from unsuitable lands and from riparian areas, roads were constructed in midslope locations and within the east fork. A hot fire consumed the remaining ground cover. The resulting chronic ravel and debris avalanches buried the east fork channel. Ongoing ravel requires regular maintenance of the road ditches. McHugh (1987) observed that the east fork debris chutes correspond with the intersection of rock bedding and joint planes.

Periodic, less intense sediment delivery from road and harvest has continued to the present. Today, the primary sediment source of concern is the major access road from Butler Bar to the north, Road 5201. Ravel from the steep cutbanks and slides of unstable fillslopes will continue to be delivered to the mainstem of Butler Creek. Because lower Butler Creek is relatively confined, with higher gradient, sediment tends to be transported to the mainstem, rather than stored. The sediment load carried by Butler Creek to the mainstem of Elk River has created a large fan below the confluence.

Measured temperatures at the mouth of Butler Creek reach a summer peak of 68°F. It is estimated that summer stream temperature at the mouth of Butler Creek has increased 7° to 8° F as result of timber harvest activities.

The primary source of heating in Butler Creek is the east fork located approximately 1 1/4 miles from the mouth. Water temperatures as high as 78°F from the tributary mix with the mainstem of Butler increasing temperature from 59°F above to 67° below the tributary. The elevated temperatures within the tributary limit its value as fish habitat. Stream temperatures above the east fork are good for resident fish habitat ranging from the 55°F to 59°F.

Without further disturbance, estimates show that Butler Creek's stream temperature at the mouth is decreasing at a rate of 1.4° F every 10 years. The recovery rate has been slowed by continued ravel and shallow failures from the large 1961 harvest unit along the east fork. Considering changes in stream flow and other variables that affect stream temperature, maximum stream temperatures on Butler Creek has been decreasing over the last two decades. Maximum stream temperature between 1976 and 1978 was 70.0 F compared to 66.0 between 1995 and 1996 or about a 4 degree decrease in two decades.

Figure 30: Maximum Stream Temperature at the mouth of Butler Creek

Year							
1976	1978	1984	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
69.1 F	71.0 F	67.8 F	68.4 F	66.4 F	65.3 F	65.5 F	66.9 F
20.6 C	21.7 C	19.9 C	20.2 C	19.1 C	18.5 C	18.6 C	19.4 C

(Note: The average of the 7 consecutive day maximum temperature should be used for determining temperature trends. However only single day maximum temperatures are available from 1974 to 1984 so, maximum stream temperature was used).

Butler contains primarily steelhead, searun cutthroat and resident trout. Due to the amount of past disturbance, it has a low habitat value and low contribution to chinook salmon and trout populations. It has a moderate contribution to the coho salmon and steelhead population. There are approximately 2.4 miles of low gradient habitat present in Butler Creek. Of the major tributaries to Elk River, Butler Creek has the lowest habitat ranking. However, it also has the greatest potential for recovery efforts. Planting and releasing native vegetation (e.g. conifers and willows) would help accelerate recovery by reducing surface and bank erosion, cooling stream temperatures and by adding long term structure elements to the aquatic system.

Panther Creek

Panther Creek is a southern tributary which enters Elk River at approximately river mile 23. McHugh (1987) observed that the mainstem of Panther Creek follows a major fault (Map 5). Sediment from large ancient slumps and slides has created multiple, historically long-term terrace deposits bordering a wide flood plain. The terraces are well vegetated with older stands of trees. The stream flows in a sinuous pattern, deflected between the terraces and resistant bedrock, and is characterized by shallow glides and riffles. Lateral scour pools are shallow; lateral and mid-stream gravel bars are common. Near the mouth of the stream is a faulted contact between the Galice and Humbug Mountain Formations. As the stream flows through the more resistant conglomerate, the bedrock channel is constricted and develops a bouldery, stepped gradient.

The East Fork of Panther Creek flows through the Galice Formation. Several large, natural failures have created unstable deposits of sediment which periodically fail, delivering boulders, finer-textured sediment, and large wood to the channel. These deposits have created a stepped stream gradient, a high degree of channel sinuosity, and multiple stream constrictions, which are sites of long-term wood accumulations. Sediment is stored behind the jams and is released periodically during high stream flows. The East Fork does not have any extensive areas of open riparian canopy or aggradation. One aggraded section appears along the toe and downstream of a large natural landslide which is active at the toe. This section is about a mile upstream from the confluence with the mainstem. This slide has delivered an estimated 44,000 cubic yards of sediment to the channel, presumably from the 1955 storm. This slide accounts for the high sediment yield for Panther Creek shown in Figure 31.

The West Fork of Panther Creek flows through the Humbug Mountain conglomerate. Slopes are steep, and ravel is the dominant erosion process. The stream course is controlled by the major faults, resulting in long, linear reaches and a low degree of channel sinuosity. Several debris slides and flows delivered pulses of fine sediment to the stream as a result of harvest prior to 1956 on privately-owned land in section 36, and harvest in 1972 lower in the drainage. Woody material is limited to small logging slash.

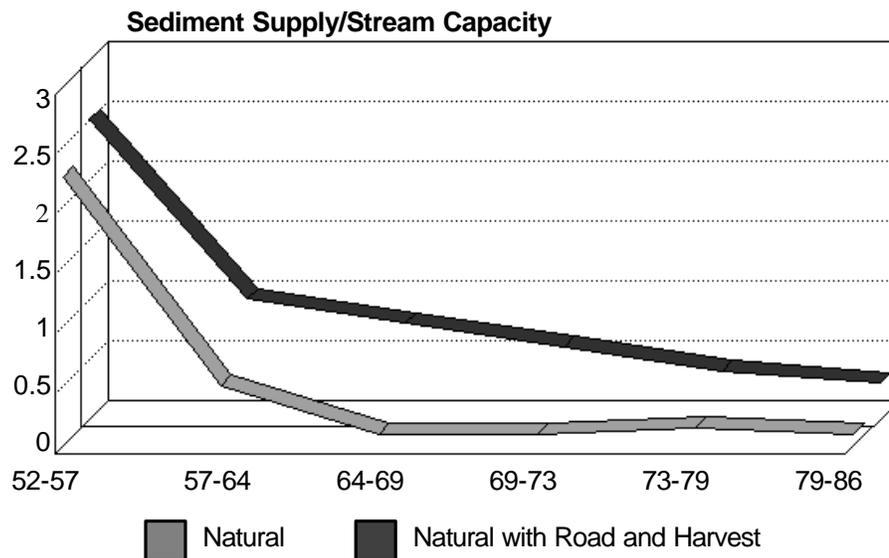
Intermittent scour and aggradation is typical of the West Fork of Panther Creek. Because the stream reach is relatively steep and straight, the stream channel and banks are vulnerable to scour from debris flows.

Both the East and West Fork lower reaches are aggraded from past sediment delivery. The lower mile of the West Fork where the gradient varies from 2 to 3 percent, remains severely aggraded. Despite low sediment delivery for the past 20 years, recovery has been slow with the channel just beginning to form pools behind logs and boulders and the width to depth ratio is improving. If sediment loading remains low it is estimated that full recovery will occur over the next 15 to 25 years.

Figure 31 compares the total sediment delivered from both natural and land use practices to Panther Creek's sediment transport capacity in the "productive flats" area (Maps 4 and 27) (see Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis). Total sediment values used in the analysis may be an over estimate, since a proportion of the sediment delivered to its upper reach and East and West Fork remains in storage. Based on the transport analysis, it is estimated that the large natural slide on the East Fork and road and harvest activity in the late 1950's through the 1960's created excessive sediment loading to the "productive flats" area on the mainstem. This probably resulted in loss of pool volume from encroachment of gravel bars as coarse-grained sediment accumulated. The low level of sediment delivery for the past 20 years combined with the ability of the mainstem to move sediment has allowed the channel to recover. This is consistent with field observations which show the lower channel to be in excellent condition.

Figure 31: Panther Creek Channel Response to Sediment

Ratios greater than 1.0 indicate sediment supply exceeds stream transport capacity.
Ratios greater than 0.5 indicate possible effects on channel morphology.



The East Fork of Panther Creek has several large, natural failures which periodically deliver boulders and finer textured sediment to the channel. These periodic failures cause short term adverse affects to water clarity in the mainstem of Panther Creek and the downstream mainstem of the Elk River.

A combination of the 1955 and 1964 storm and timber harvest resulted in a reduction of stream shade and increased stream width. Stream temperature increased over a two decade period. From river mile 1 to the mouth the stream is naturally wide, increasing stream heating through this section. Such areas, while warm in temperature, are considered to be fish/aquatic "hot spots." Elevated temperatures in these reaches contribute to higher productivity, but must be moderated by cool water input from upstream sources. Early logging of riparian vegetation elevated the cool water temperature from upstream sources. Results from

stream temperature modeling indicate that summer stream temperature at the mouth increased 4 degrees F from timber harvest.

Since 1980, average maximum stream temperatures in Panther Creek have been decreasing as stream shade recovers from past disturbance. Independent of the variables that influence stream temperature, continued temperature monitoring from 1974 to 1995 clearly show a declining trend in maximum summer temperatures. Without further disturbance, such as a major storm, stream temperature modeling estimated that Panther Creek has a recovery rate of 1.6 F every 10 years. Maximum stream temperature between 1974 and 1976 was 68.0 F compared to 64.0 in 1995 or a 4 degree decrease in two decades.

Figure 32: Maximum Stream Temperature at the Mouth of Panther Creek

Year	1974	1976	1978	1984	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
69.0 F	67.0	70.0	66.0	64.9	64.0	63.1	63.9	63.9	Lost
20.6 C	19.4	21.1	18.9	18.3	17.8	17.3	17.7	17.7	

(Note: The average of the 7 consecutive day maximum temperature should be used for determining temperature trends. However only single day maximum temperatures are available from 1974 to 1984 so, maximum stream temperature was used).

Panther Creek contains moderate populations of chinook and coho salmon and high populations of steelhead. It is rated as the second most important subwatershed. The west fork of Panther Creek contains the majority of the coho spawning and rearing habitat found in the subwatershed (Burnett 1997, personal communication). The lower mile of Panther Creek is a productive flat, susceptible to changes in sediment and large wood input as discussed above. A maximum of 6.5 miles of habitat are accessible to anadromous fish.

Bald Mountain Creek

Bald Mountain Creek is a large southern tributary that enters the Elk River at approximately river mile 15, two miles above the fish hatchery. The lower third of Bald Mountain Creek drainage is largely under private ownership. Except for a small area in the upper part of the watershed managed by the BLM, the remaining area is under Forest Service management.

A flat is located above the confluence of the mainstem and the South Fork of Bald Mountain Creek (Maps 4 and 27). This area is surrounded by large slump-earthflows in complex geologic structure with multiple faults (McHugh 1987). Weaker Galice Formation and ultramafic rocks are mixed with more resistant metavolcanics and diorite exposures. Periodic undercutting of the slump-earthflows by the channel causes reactivation of the slides, with chronic sediment and large wood delivery to the channel. The channel is sinuous with a low gradient, wide floodplain, and multiple terrace deposits with high groundwater retention. Reaches upstream in the diorite are straighter, with shallower channel units resulting from durable cobble-sized sediment delivered by debris slides and torrents.

The presence of many large boulders and large wood jams that completely blocked the channel in the lower to middle portions of the creek was documented in a 1930's log transport feasibility report (Port Orford Ranger District). Reeves (1984) reported the importance of large wood jams, both partial and complete, in accumulating and retaining gravels in lower Bald Mountain Creek. The formation and degradation of debris jams appears to be an on-going process. There is evidence of many previous jams along the stream, particularly at channel constrictions. When a jam breaks, woody material and gravel move downstream and become incorporated into new or existing jams. There are several partial jams in the upper portion of the survey area that are in various stages of rebuilding. The largest jams are located in the middle to lower sections. According to local residents, these jams were smaller before upstream jams broke during a storm event in 1986. An estimated 50-75% of the wood in these jams accumulated since that event. At one site where the jam is estimated to be 5 meters high, nearly all of the estimated 10,240 cubic meters of gravel accumulated as a result of that event (local resident, personal communication with Reeves).

Considerable quantities of sediment have been delivered to the mainstem of Bald Mountain Creek, both directly and via two tributaries which enter from the south in section 27. Notable landslides are from Roads 5502 and 5400020, from harvest on privately-owned land in section 22, and from harvest of the Oakridge units in 1979.

McHugh (1985) documented an increase in open riparian canopy perhaps resulting from the 1964 event, but also saw an upstream shift in the distribution of open riparian canopy from 1956, 1969, and 1979 photos. The magnitude of road and harvest-related slides in this upstream reach has aggraded the channel and created a distinct change in the riparian vegetation.

Figure 33 compares the total sediment delivered from both natural and land use practices to Bald Mountain Creek's sediment transport capacity in the low gradient area on the mainstem (Maps 4 and 27) (see Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis). Total sediment values used in the analysis may be an overestimate, since a proportion of the sediment delivered to its upper reaches remains in storage. Based on the transport analysis, it is estimated that the sediment transport capacity has been continually exceeded for the past 40 years from road and harvest activity.

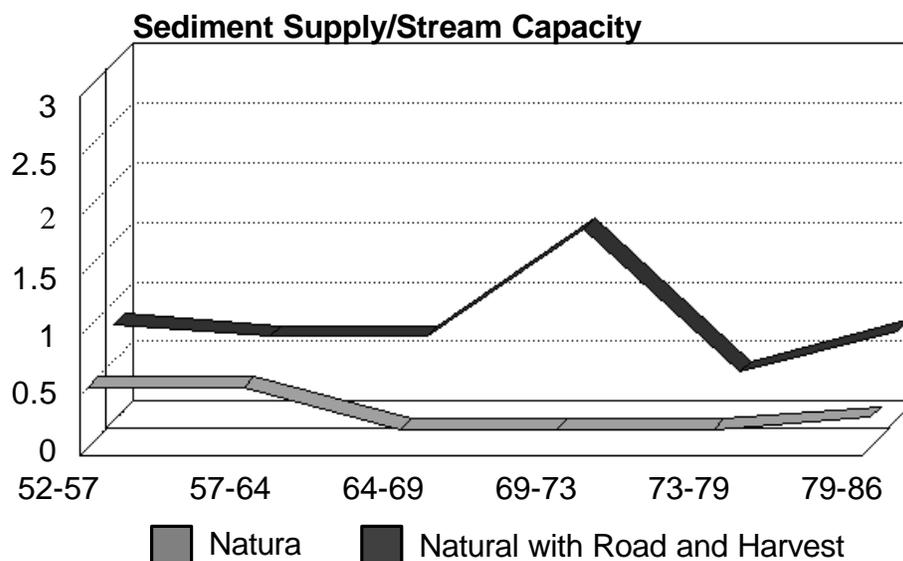
The excessive sediment loading to the mainstem has caused pools to fill and the channel width to depth ratio to significantly increase. These findings are consistent with field observations and fish surveys. It is speculated that the continued persistence of debris flows from road and harvest units may be affecting channel recovery.

A periodic source of turbidity is present at the toe of a large earthflow located in T33S, R14W, section 20, adjacent to the National Forest boundary in the northwest quarter of that section. In the past, a shift in the channel location directed streamflow into the landslide toe, carrying fine sediments downstream which clouded Bald Mountain Creek and the mainstem Elk River below the confluence. Water clarity of the mainstem of the Elk River was affected past the fish hatchery and well into the lower river, following the largest winter storms and persisting for two to three days. Presently the toe of the earthflow is protected from erosion by large wood and boulders.

Considering changes in stream flow and other variables that affect stream temperature, maximum stream temperatures on Bald Mountain Creek has remained unchanged for two decades. Stream temperature modeling indicates that temperature at the mouth has increased 5 F to 6 F degrees as a result of timber harvest and road construction. Most of the stream heating occurs on the lower mainstem of Bald Mtn Creek. This is attributed to a wide aggraded channel and harvest of tall conifers which were replaced by hardwoods as the primary stream shade. It is speculated that there will be little change in stream shade and channel conditions, holding stream temperatures at current levels.

Figure 33: Bald Mountain Creek Channel Response to Sediment

Ratios greater than 1.0 indicate sediment supply exceeds stream transport capacity.
Ratios greater than 0.5 indicate possible effects on channel morphology.



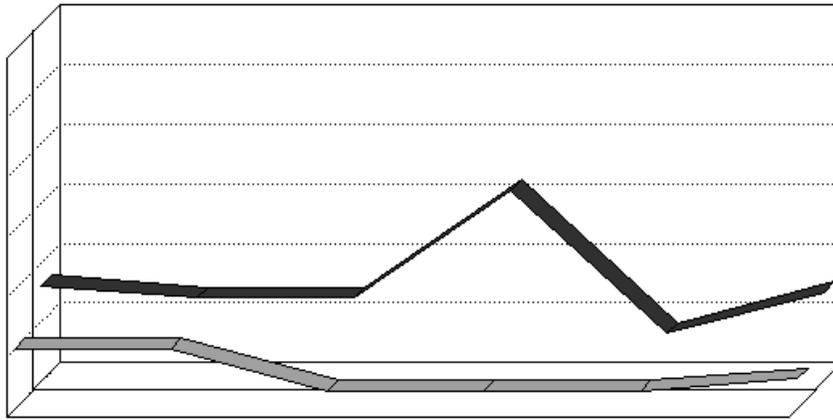


Figure 34: Maximum Stream Temperature at the mouth of Bald Mountain Creek

Year									
1976	1978	1984	1990	1991	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
65.0F	66.0F	66.0F	66.4F	67.5F	67.3F	NC	64.4F	67.3F	65.0F
18.3 C	18.9 C	18.9 C	19.1 C	19.7 C	19.6 C	NC	18.0 C	19.6 C	18.3 C

(Note: The average of the 7 consecutive day maximum temperature should be used for determining temperature trends. However only single day maximum temperatures are available from 1974 to 1984 so, maximum stream temperature was used).

NC = Not Collected

A report from the Oregon Game Commission (mid-1960's) indicated that Bald Mountain Creek contained coho and chinook salmon, in addition to steelhead and cutthroat trout. Increased quantities of sediment and elevated stream temperatures may be responsible for the loss of the salmon in Bald Mountain Creek. Today, salmon juveniles are largely absent from Bald Mountain Creek. Spawning and rearing are concentrated below the six foot falls near the mouth (RM 0.2). High densities of juvenile steelhead contribute substantially to the Elk River. Bald Mountain Creek is considered the most important tributary for steelhead rearing and production in the watershed (Susac 1997, personal communication). Bear Creek, a tributary to Bald Mountain Creek contains very high densities of cutthroat trout. The salmonid habitat rating is moderate, with some flats not meeting their productive potential. A maximum of five miles is accessible to anadromous fish in the subwatershed.

The Bald Mountain Creek subwatershed may be an example of how timber harvest and road building can influence the assemblage of anadromous fish. Winter steelhead seem to be more tolerant to increases of sediment because they spawn in the spring after most gravel-shifting rainstorms occur. Juvenile steelhead can rear successfully in riffle-dominated environments. Salmon prefer pool habitat and large wood material (especially coho salmon), and are usually associated with more stable stream systems.

Smaller Tributaries

The mainstem of Elk River has numerous tributaries which are too small to be designated as subwatersheds. These are known as "facing" drainages, and have been divided into groups of Lower, Middle, and Upper areas. The Lower Area drains into the mainstem downstream from the hatchery and will be discussed separately. The Middle Area includes Anvil, Slate, Purple Mountain, and other unnamed creeks. The Upper Area includes Red Cedar, Sunshine, Lost, Milbury, Bungalow, and other unnamed creeks.

These tributaries are important as sources of sediment and large wood because of their proximity to the mainstem. The high volume delivered by natural slides in the Upper Area (Figure 24) is mainly from three large slides ranging from 9,600 to 17,700 cubic yards which failed prior to 1973. In the Middle Area, four road-related slides ranging from 10,300 to 29,400 cubic yards failed prior to 1969 along the Elk River road. Within Purple Mountain Creek (Middle Area), intense road and harvest disturbance in the late 1950's and following the 1962 blowdown event caused extremely high sediment delivery from landslides and surface erosion (Figure 24).

Red Cedar Creek is included in the Upper Area. Located entirely within the Grassy Knob Wilderness, all disturbance in this watershed has been of natural origin. Humbug Mountain Conglomerate is present in the upper watershed, with a high-gradient bedrock and boulder cascade channel (McHugh 1987). The lower mile of Red Cedar Creek is within the Galice Formation. Several relatively large inactive debris slides are present within the deep soils. Debris deposits form terraces along a relatively sinuous, low-gradient channel. Large wood accumulations are present at channel constrictions.

In the lower channel of Red Cedar Creek, a debris slide in February, 1986 (known as the "alder patch" to stream survey crews) was cited as having reduced the areas of pools and glides by 22% and 72%, respectively, between surveys in 1985 and 1986 (Reeves 1988, p.13). The landslide inventory update by McHugh did not detect a new slide in Red Cedar Creek. This may be because it was a reactivation of an existing slide, a slide that was too small to include (<100 square meters), or an oversight in the inventory. Additional information about the effects of such a natural event on fish habitat could be gained by reexamining the aerial photos and comparing pool and glide areas from subsequent stream surveys.

The smaller tributaries such as Anvil, Red Cedar, and Purple Mountain Creek contain lesser amounts of aquatic habitat for salmonids, but are very important. The stream temperature on these tributaries is good ranging from the mid 50° F to low 60°F. The lower reaches of these tributaries are important for juvenile refuge from high stream temperatures and high flow conditions in the mainstem. In addition, Anvil and Red Cedar Creeks contain some of the highest coho rearing densities found in the Elk River (Figure 28).

Lower Mainstem

The lower mainstem contains the bulk of the historic coho habitat. It is an extremely valuable winter refuge area and out migration corridor. All of the species indigenous to the watershed utilize this section in some part of their life cycle. Chum salmon spawn and rear entirely in the lower reaches. The majority of the hatchery chinook salmon spawn from the hatchery downstream to Bagley Creek (Susac 1997, personal communication). Large numbers of steelhead pre-smolts overwinter in the lower mainstem prior to out migration the following spring.

The lower mainstem of the Elk River contains several tributaries that are the focus of restoration activities on private lands. Rock, Bagley and Indian Creeks have the highest potential for coho recovery efforts. Local watershed councils have been working with private landowners to restore habitats. For a list of completed projects see Restoration Accomplishments section. Management should pursue cost share opportunities to assist efforts on private lands.

Fisheries

The November flood of 1996 had definite impacts upon the fisheries resource. To what degree these impacts have on salmonid populations will be unknown for several years. Preliminary observations made in the mainstem and tributaries by Ken Flizar (1997, personal communication) of the Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife's Elk River Research Laboratory include:

- Noticeable increase of sand and silt in the mainstem.
- Pools have decreased depth.
- Historically deep pools have noticeably filled in with sediments.
- Widespread loss of riparian vegetation.
- Gravel bars have grown in size.

- There is less large woody in the mainstem of the Elk River.
- Steelhead smolt numbers were well below average at the hatchery smolt trap.
- Steelhead smolt numbers were average at the lower smolt trap.
- There seems to be low numbers of age 1+ steelhead rearing in the Elk River.
- Many of the 1+ steelhead have predator marks on them.
- The steelhead young of the year are abundant and show excellent growth.
- The late migrating chinook smolts were largely absent from the upper mainstem.
- There is an increase of filamentous algae higher up in the watershed.

Many of these effects are similar to those that occurred after the 1955 and 1964 floods (see channel morphology section). The reduction in pool volumes and increases in fine sediments has the most impact upon salmonid populations, especially for those species that rear in fresh water for a year or more. Available rearing habitat appears to have decreased. The loss of riparian vegetation will take years to recover and management should pursue planting of fast growing willows, hardwoods and conifers on exposed areas to accelerate the recovery process. Continued monitoring of salmonid populations and habitat will be important to assess the complete effects and recovery rates of the November 1996 storm.

CHAPTER 4 CONDITION TRENDS

COMMODITY VALUES

Timber

It is expected that the current trend is likely to continue, whereas timber harvest, in the Federal portion of the watershed, will provide a very small amount of direct economic contribution to the local economy. Timber harvest from Federal lands in the watershed have decreased over the last two decades. The current Management Plan (NFP) covering the Elk River Watershed will allow programmed timber harvest across approximately 3,300 acres.

Mining

It is expected that the current trend will continue and mining will not make any significant contribution to employment in the local area.

There will continue to be conflicts between suction dredging interests and resource protection, related to increased turbidity and the resorting of gravels that can affect the reproduction and development of salmonids.

Special Forest Products

Demand for firewood will remain constant for the next few years, but will probably decline in the long term, because of availability or increased cost. The supply of firewood from National Forest lands and commercial timber lands in the Elk River drainage will be quite low.

Potential conflicts exist over the availability of firewood. Some users expect plentiful, easy to get firewood and view the restrictive policies used to protect LSR values and wildlife habitat (snags and down logs) as unjustified.

There is a great deal of market variability for special forest products (beargrass, boughs, mushrooms, etc.) As a whole class of products the outlook is good; demand is far less than supply. Availability of permits should be good with the exception of Port-Orford-cedar boughs, which are not currently being sold because of past damage and the threat of spreading root rot disease. Conflicts include; collecting products during the wet season and trying to limit use of the roads to reduce the spread of POC root disease, competition between different forest product collectors, and over collection of products before proper administrative rules can be implemented and enforced.

The economic contribution of special forest products will be low.

Agriculture

The Curry County trend for agriculture is good, and the same favorable trend is predicted for the agricultural lands of the lower Elk River. Specialty products (timber from private woodlands) have shown a dramatic increase since 1984. Likewise berry production, primarily cranberries, has doubled in ten years. Livestock and associated products have remained steady through the last decade. Gross farm sales in Curry County have improved from approximately \$30,000,000 in 1984 to \$90,000,000 in 1994 (Anderson 1995).

Fishing

The commercial and sport fisheries industry is probably the second place contributor to the local economy. Salmon was a major share of the total fish catch until recently. The Elk River makes a significant contribution in salmonid fish production. Commercial and sport salmon fishing has been severely restricted during the last three years in an attempt to increase the number of salmon returning to the area's rivers and streams to spawn.

Bottom fish (also called "ground fish") will continue to make up the major share of the commercial catch. The recent trend for commercial fishing has been downward, and the commercial industry will likely continue a downward trend. There has been strong interest in the sport fishery, and this interest will continue and support the recreation segment of the economy.

Potential conflicts exist between commercial and sport fisherman; each wants more fish from what some believe is a declining resource. A second issue is the effects timber harvest and road construction have had on anadromous fish habitat and, ultimately, fish populations.

AMENITY VALUES: Scenery

In the lower portion of the Elk River, road and building construction will continue to increase as the area continues to grow in popularity. Service-oriented small businesses may proliferate in response to the needs and expectations of visitors.

The NFP will result in a decline in opportunities for timber harvest in the upper portion of the Elk River. This will result in the maintenance of a Natural to Near Natural Scenic condition. Views to the river from the Elk River road will become more limited as vegetation continues to grow in the foreground. Increased recreational use and development may be more evident along the Elk River road.

In the North Fork, South Fork, and the tributaries, previously harvested units will become less evident as vegetation continues to grow.

The scenic quality of the Grassy Knob Wilderness area will remain the same.

PUBLIC USE VALUES: Recreation and Access

Most of the current recreation use in the Elk River watershed takes place within the river corridor. This pattern is likely to continue into the future. The Elk River is easily accessible from the parallel road on the south bank, and the most desirable sites for dispersed or developed campgrounds are found close to the river. The high quality of the recreational experience will continue to attract a growing number of users. The majority of the current use is by local residents, but there is certainly some potential to attract visitors to the unique features of the Elk River. In order to accommodate current and anticipated use some recreation facilities will need to be improved to provide better sanitation and access to the river. All improvements should be designed to blend with the natural setting. Improvements should include barrier free access to selected sites along the river. Improved rest room facilities should be provided at higher use sites so proper sanitation is maintained. Site hardening could include designating travelways, controlling drainage, and delineating camping sites to better protect the natural character.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: Terrestrial Ecosystem

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency and Patch Size
Large Woody Material

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency

Decreased fire frequency can result in a variety of associated changes to stand structure, fire intensity, patch sizes, and the amount of large woody material found on site. Stand structure changes to a more dense understory with a higher percentage of shade tolerant trees, such as western hemlock, in the overstory. The increased fuel loading from fire suppression activities generally results in more high-intensity, stand replacing fires and a net reduction in large woody material. Existing plantations are characterized by "flashy fuels" and will host high intensity fires, which in turn, further reduce large woody material levels.

Increased fuel loading of understory and overstory vegetation alters fire behavior. If the infrequent disturbance patterns of approximately 500 to 800 years continue, then fires will be less frequent than historical patterns, but larger, and more intense.

Weather conditions and vegetation patterns determine the amount of windthrow (Spies and Franklin 1989). The likelihood of windthrow is greatest during the winter months, where soil moisture is at the highest. This characteristic combined with typical northwesterly wind patterns tend to facilitate conditions for windthrow, in combination with timber edge effects. As the patch size increases, the edge effect decreases. Consequently, as patch sizes increase with the changing disturbance pattern, less windthrow is expected to occur. The reduced edge effect and windthrow may be somewhat counter-balanced by the increased western hemlock stand component. Western hemlock is less wind-firm than Douglas-fir; as it becomes a larger component of the overstory, more windthrow can be expected.

Future disturbance trends will vary with the amount and type of disturbance events and management activities. If suppression activities are successful and no harvest occurs, the projected disturbance interval would be 500-800 years.

Future management may begin to introduce fire back into these ecosystems to reduce fuel accumulations where fires were a natural component of the plant community.

Landscape Patterns: Patch Size

Currently the patch sizes in both the Hemlock and Tanoak plant series in the North Coast LSR are smaller than other LSRs analyzed in the Southwest Oregon Late-Successional Reserve Assessment. The patch size in the LSR will become larger with the combined effect of curtailed timber harvest and continued fire suppression. Larger patches will reduce the amount of edge habitat while the amount of interior old growth habitat will increase.

Large Woody Material in the Terrestrial Ecosystem

The amount of large woody material in the watershed is projected to increase due to growth and development of structure associated with older forests, even with the more intense, less frequent, stand replacement fires that tend to consume more large wood.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Wildlife

- Late/Early successional Species
- Exotic Species
- Neotropical Migrant Bird Species (NTMB)
- Natural Disturbance
- Wildlife Habitats

Late/Early Successional Species

As the focus of land management changes, so, too, does future impacts on wildlife. With 69% of the watershed devoted primarily to the maintenance of late-successional forest, one would expect to see a

stabilization, or possibly an increase, in those species associated with that habitat type. There exists a concern in predicting an increase in late-successional species simply because habitat removal has been slowed. Observing northern spotted owls with juveniles for the past 2 decades that surveys have been done in Elk River does not necessarily indicate that the population is healthy. (In fact, only one pair with young has been observed for the activity centers in the watershed, see Figure 14). It is also critical to know if the young are surviving and reproducing themselves; we don't have that information for the District. If the young are not finding suitable habitat for territories and are not breeding, then an abrupt crash in population could occur as established breeding pairs die off. Monitoring the activity centers in Elk River will be crucial to determine at least breeding success. To know survival and establishment of young will require a banding or radio telemetry project.

Considerably less area is currently allocated to timber management activities and it is possible that those species dependent on openings and early seral habitat could decline in parts of the watershed (natural disturbances will continue to create openings). Estimated acres of early seral in 1890 are 31.8% of National Forest lands; projected acres for 2040 are 23.8% (see Map 10 and 29; and Appendix B for definitions of seral stages). However, some early successional species are more adaptable and will survive as timber harvesting on a large scale declines.

There is documentation that the northern spotted owl continues to decline across its entire range at a rate exceeding 4% per year, with a 1% annual acceleration (Burnham et al. 1994). Given the recent declines in habitat removal, a possible factor continuing to impede the owl's recovery is disturbance (Hanson et al. 1993). We have not been collecting long-term trend data on northern spotted owls in the Elk River watershed, only presence/probable absence information, and that only in proposed project areas rather than in all suitable habitat. Again, monitoring of activity centers and juvenile dispersal success would give us an idea of population trends for the watershed.

Exotic Species

It is difficult to predict future trends for exotic species since so little is known about their distribution and rate of spread in Oregon. It would appear that on National Forest land in the watershed there has not been an explosion of non-native species, however, studies addressing specifically these questions have not been done.

Neotropical Migrant Bird Species (NTMB)

Approximately 70 species of neotropical migrant bird species are present, or potentially present, on the Siskiyou National Forest during the breeding season (Vroman 1994). A study commissioned in the last three years by the Region 6 NTMB steering committee, using U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service Breeding Bird Survey data, determined that 23 species show significant declines in Oregon and Washington. Sixteen of these species are associated with riparian areas. Due to migrants wintering in neotropical areas, it is not certain if the problem of decline is at the breeding or wintering locations, or both. Specific examples include declines in Hammond's flycatchers and western tanagers (*Piranga ludoviciana*) of averages of 19.5%/year and 3.8%/year, respectively, from 1982 to 1991 in Oregon (Hagar 1996). In the Elk River watershed, breeding numbers for Hammond's flycatcher are very low and one tanager was heard in 1993 and 1994 (see Figure 16).

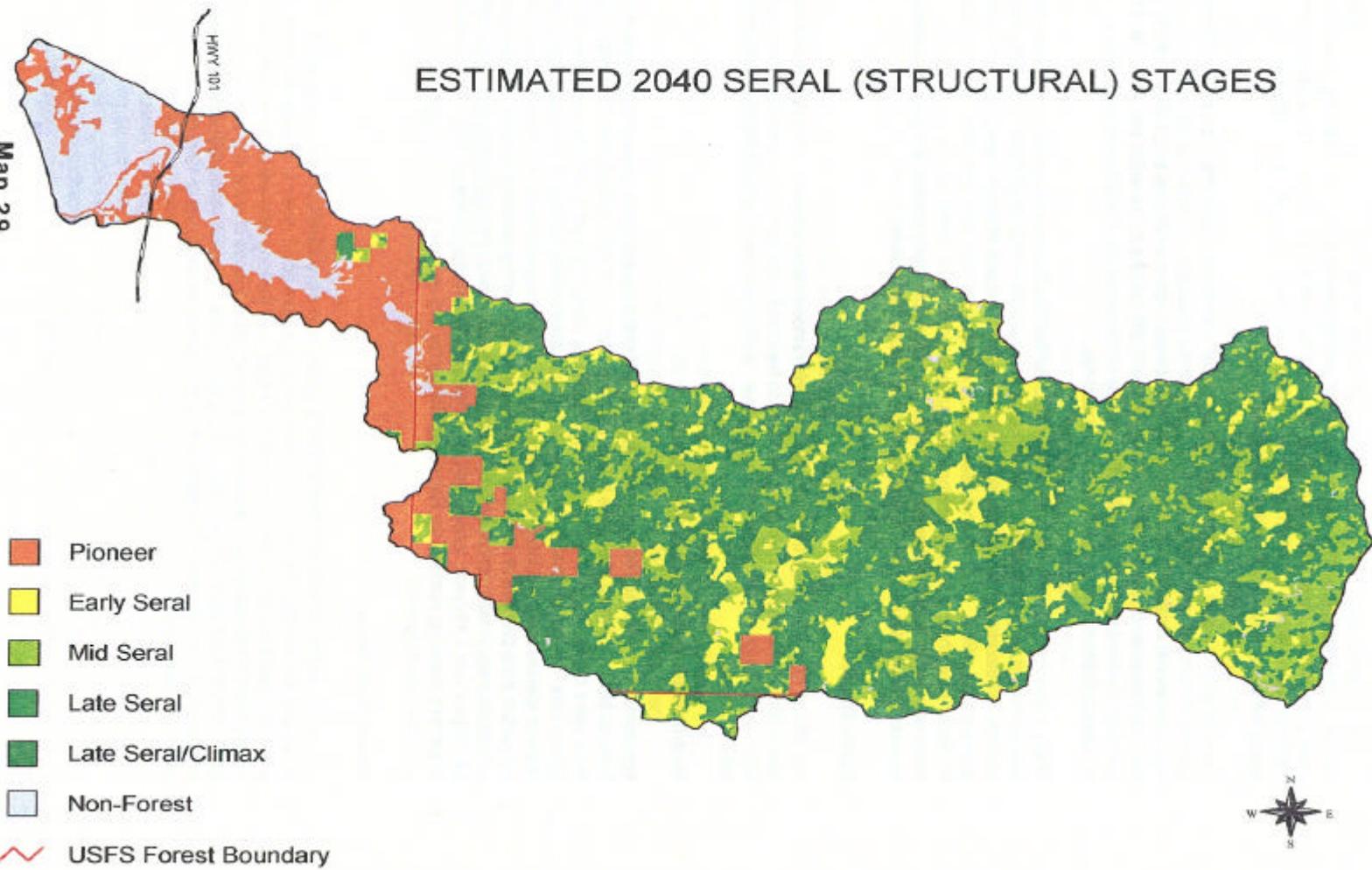
Natural Disturbance

Future natural phenomena will affect wildlife populations in the watershed such as fires, floods, landslides, and windstorms. Fires of a stand replacing nature occur rarely in the watershed and could potentially displace some wildlife, however the impact over the long term will be beneficial providing that refugia exists for displaced animals while an area recovers. Floods of great size also occur rarely and displacement is possible. For example, a study being done on foothill yellow-legged frogs shows early indications of low

presence in the major rivers after the November floods of 1996 (Boreschenko 1997, personal communication).

Map 29

ESTIMATED 2040 SERAL (STRUCTURAL) STAGES



Wildlife Habitats

Presently, the predominant habitat type is temperate, coniferous forest with a very small percentage of the watershed being unique and special habitats such as lakes and ponds, talus sites, meadows, hardwood stands. These latter areas are protected and will continue to be managed as special wildlife areas.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: Aquatic Ecosystem

Landslides and Surface Erosion
Water Clarity
Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem
Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature
Stream Flow
Channel Morphology
Fish Habitat, Distribution, and Populations

Landslides and Surface Erosion

Sediment delivery is expected to continue from three sources:

- the continued effects of past activities on both Federal and non-Federal lands,
- new management-related disturbances on both Federal and non-Federal lands,
- natural disturbances.

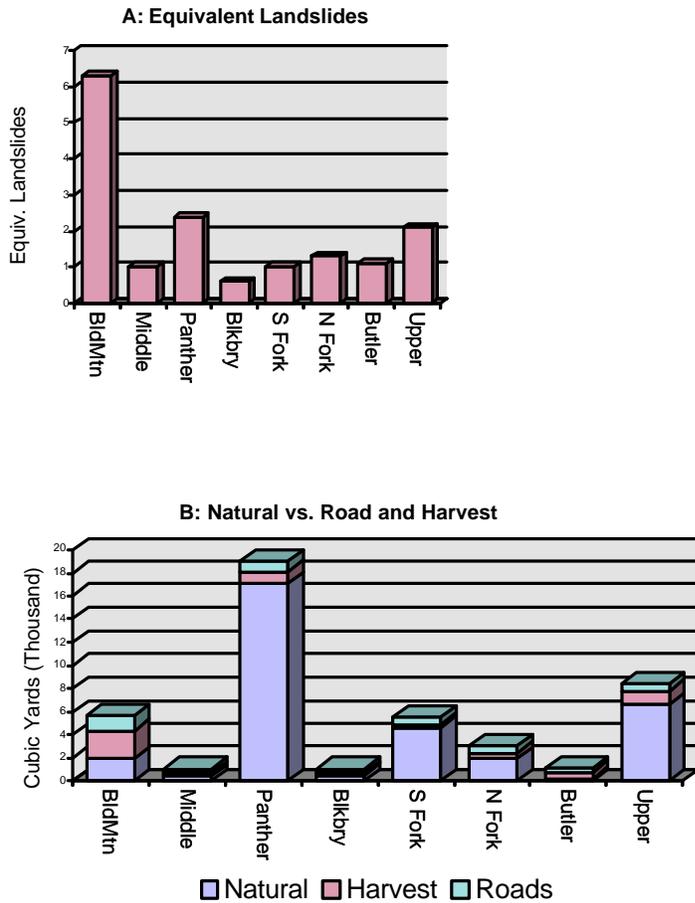
Sediment delivery and surface erosion are expected to be reduced from levels observed from 1960 to the late 1980's. This anticipated change is a result of reduced timber harvest and road construction activities as well as improved land management practices. Because timber harvest has traditionally generated road maintenance funding, the designation of Late-Successional Reserves will reduce funds available for road maintenance. Older roads will continue to fail and erode in some areas.

In 1992, an average volume of road and harvest-related sediment delivery was estimated for each subwatershed (except Lower Elk - no data available) for the next decade. This volume is displayed in terms of numbers of landslides of average size (Figure 35 A). The method used to calculate this volume is discussed in Appendix J. These values include the location and timing of past activities and anticipated future activities for non-Federal lands. To provide a context, road and harvest-related landslide sediment is compared with similar estimates for natural landslides (Figure 35 B). The frequency of large natural slides such as the one that dominates the East Fork Panther Creek, is not easily predicted. Therefore, natural slide volumes are expected to vary considerably from these values. In order to compare the landslide sediment yield from the November 1996 storm with the projected trends, an air photo inventory of landslides is needed.

Landslide sediment delivery could be reduced if a comprehensive restoration program is implemented as detailed in Chapter 5.

Figure 35: Estimated Future Sediment

Natural volumes are based on past landslides. Future volumes are uncertain.



Water Clarity

On Federal lands, the NFP of 1994 allocated most of the watershed to Late-Successional Reserves. With the reduction of timber harvest and road building from previous decades and continued restoration efforts on private lands in the lower part of the watershed, water quality is expected to remain excellent in future decades.

Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem

Large wood already in the channel will continue to move downstream. Previously harvested areas with potential to deliver additional large wood will be in a state of recovery for the next 100 years as immature conifers grow. This includes approximately 27 percent of the watershed area that lies outside of the wilderness.

For most areas, sufficient large wood remains to meet future needs (see Current Conditions). However, two subwatersheds may have long-term effects from loss of large wood supply. Reaches of Butler Creek outside of the wilderness may be seriously depleted from harvest of some of the area potentially supplying large wood. Future recovery may be delayed because surface ravel and shallow failures slow establishment of new conifers. Approximately 33 percent of the potential large wood supply has been lost

on Bald Mountain Creek. Here, there may be minimal recovery in harvested riparian areas as hardwoods dominate these once conifer-rich areas.

In general, the supply of large wood to off-Forest reaches will continue to be limited by agricultural practices and development.

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature

McSwain (1988) compiled existing data to evaluate summer stream temperature trends in Elk River. The study concluded that overall, maximum stream temperatures in the mainstem Elk River have been declining since 1964. The three subwatersheds with elevated stream temperatures, Bald Mountain, Panther, and Butler, are expected to show a decline in summer stream temperatures as shade trees grow in harvested riparian areas. Estimated recovery rates range from a low of 0.5°F/decade in Bald Mountain to a high of 1.6°F/decade in Panther Creek.

Below the Forest boundary, stream temperatures are expected to remain critical. Cooling trends within the forest boundary will not be sufficient to offset stream heating below the boundary resulting from the loss of riparian vegetation.

Stream Flow

As vegetation grows in previously harvested units and roads are decommissioned, any effects these activities may have had on streamflow will gradually decrease.

Channel Morphology

The ratio of sediment delivery to stream transport capacity was shown in Chapter 3 for the three subwatersheds analyzed in detail. The historical condition may be compared with the projected future condition for both natural and road/harvest sources.

Two subwatersheds which remain most affected by excessive sediment loading are Butler and Bald Mountain. Future recovery trends will remain poor despite a decrease in sediment production, because of depleted large wood supply and continued timber harvest on private lands in Bald Mountain Creek. Tributaries to the mainstem of Panther Creek are expected to continue to recover, incising and creating deeper pools over the next two decades.

Channel conditions are expected to improve overall. However, if road maintenance continues to decline without decommissioning unmaintained roads, channel conditions could again decline.

Below the Forest boundary, loss of vegetation from private development will continue to affect stream bank stability, producing sediment from bank erosion. This, combined with the continuing absence of large wood, will slow recovery in the lower reaches. The Elk River Watershed Council and private land owners together are implementing riparian and bank restoration projects. This effort will aid in the long term recovery of the lower Elk River.

Fish Habitat, Distribution and Populations

Fish habitat is in degraded condition in the east fork of Butler Creek, the lower mainstem of Bald Mountain Creek, and the mainstem of Elk River below the Forest boundary.

The temperature in the east fork of Butler Creek will gradually decline as the aggraded stream channel continues to incise and riparian vegetation matures. However, it will be several decades before the stream temperature is reduced enough to improve summer rearing conditions.

In Bald Mountain Creek, continual sediment delivery from timber harvest and roads on private land will delay coho salmon habitat recovery. The reduction of potential large wood supply, another key element for coho habitat, may also slow the recovery rate.

Below the Forest boundary, habitat conditions are expected to remain in critical condition for salmonid rearing potential due to excessive summer temperatures. Despite predicted cooling upstream, the historic loss of riparian vegetation from development will slow recovery efforts. Watershed councils and landowners are working together to address these problems. Numerous conifers and native plants have been planted, but will take years to have beneficial effects.

Juvenile coho salmon require complex habitat for over-wintering before migrating to the ocean. Reduced sediment delivery will help the re-formation of pools, but it is uncertain how much habitat recovery is possible. Restoration practices on private and public lands are starting to initiate recovery processes. Since the lower mainstem contains the bulk of the historic coho habitat, it is critical that riparian management practices be modified to ensure the lower river channel includes functional riparian zones, large wood complexes and other instream features for optimum salmonid rearing habitat.

CHAPTER 5 DESIRED TRENDS AND RECOMMENDED PROJECTS

COMMODITY VALUES

The desired future trend for the Elk River watershed would involve a variety of activities; individually, each will make a small contribution, but collectively, they will provide a broad spectrum of reliable and sustainable commodity values. The activities would include:

- a predictable supply of timber harvest and related employment,
- steady to slightly increasing fish runs for sport and commercial fisheries,
- employment opportunities in restoration work, road decommissioning, and riparian planting for bank stabilization
- economic diversification through non-timber forest products including mushrooms, boughs, conks, etc., and
- eco-tourism, and natural resource interpretation.

AMENITY VALUES: Scenery

The desired trend is to maintain the natural beauty along the Elk River and within the watershed. In the upper river corridor, the Siskiyou Forest Plan and the NFP complement these goals for natural beauty, or natural appearing landscapes; the elimination of roads for watershed restoration will restore the natural landscapes. As vegetation grows, views from the Elk River road may be maintained by cutting vegetation adjacent to the road.

PUBLIC USE VALUES: Recreation and Access

As stated in FEMAT, "The information on recreation demand that is reported in the Oregon and Washington State Outdoor Recreation Plans indicate there is a high and increasing demand for recreation settings with little development and management activity, relatively low use, and no motorized access permitted. For example, recent work by Swanson and Loomis (1993) indicates that although there are about 5.5 million acres already currently allocated to primitive and semiprimitive, nonmotorized recreation, the forecasted demand by the year 2000 will be nearly 13.5 million acres" (FEMAT 1993).

The elimination of roads for watershed restoration will complement the local and regional demands for semiprimitive, nonmotorized opportunities. Semiprimitive, motorized opportunities may be enhanced by upgrading existing recreation facilities along the Elk River road to modern accessibility and pit toilet standards.

The main roads; Elk River 5325, Iron Mtn. 5502, and Sixes 5201 will be important for fire suppression access.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: Terrestrial Ecosystem

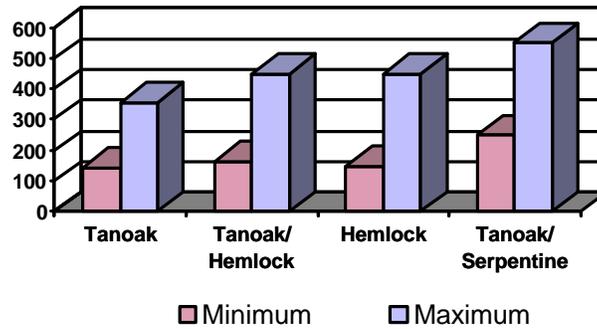
The desired trends would extend the historic trends under which the watershed has evolved, maintaining biodiversity within the watershed.

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency and Patch Size
Large Woody Material

Landscape Patterns: Disturbance Frequency

For the watershed, the desired stand replacement interval would be within the range of conditions under which all species have evolved and would not approach the extremes of the range (Swanson et al.). This range will vary by plant series (Figure 63).

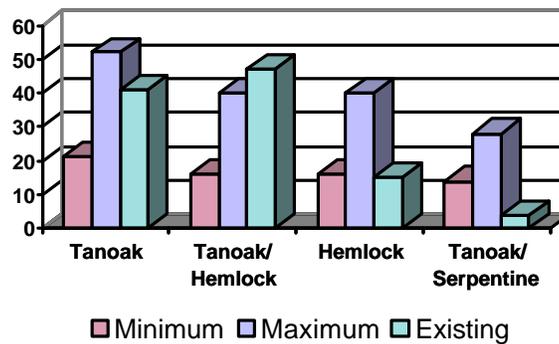
Figure 36: Desired Stand Replacement Interval



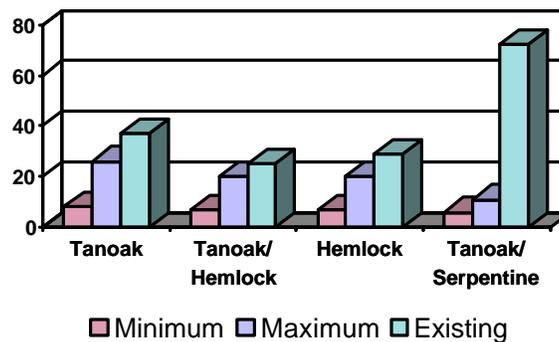
Given the desired range of stand replacement intervals, the range of age class distributions displayed in Figure 37 should be appropriate.

Figure 37: Desired Age Class Distribution by Plant Series

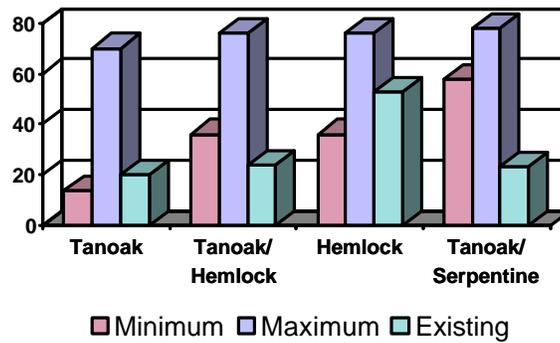
Vegetation less than 100 years old (Percent Of Area)



Vegetation 100 - 200 years old (Percent of Area)

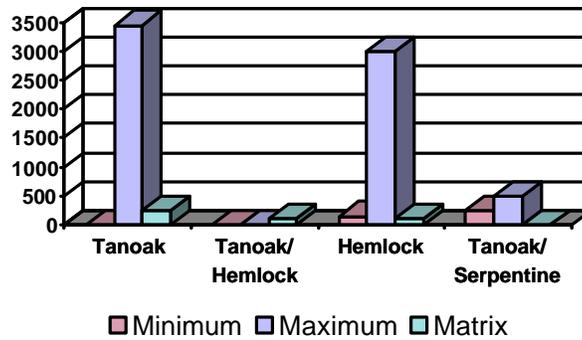


Vegetation Greater Than 200 Years Old (Percent of Area)



The existing age class distributions for the hemlock, tanoak/hemlock, and tanoak/serpentine plant series are outside the desired ranges shown in Figure 37. This existing imbalance can be corrected by vegetation management activities such as fire and harvest, dispersed over a 50-year period. Figure 38 shows the range of treatment acres that would correct this imbalance, and the acres of Matrix land available for treatment.

Figure 38: Desired Acres for Vegetative Treatment, Matrix Acres, by Plant Series



Treating only Matrix lands will not correct the existing departure from natural trends. For example, the tanoak/serpentine plant series appears to have the largest imbalance with an excess amount of vegetation between 100 and 200 years of age, and a limited amount of vegetation less than 100 years of age. However, the land available in the Matrix is not sufficient to correct the imbalance. The plants and animals dependent upon the young seral stage in the tanoak-serpentine plant series have limited habitat. Use of prescribed fire in the Late-Successional Reserves could correct this imbalance.

Patch Size

The desired patch size should include the range of conditions under which all species in the watershed evolved and should not approach the extremes of the range. This range will vary by plant series.

Large Woody Material in the Terrestrial Ecosystem

The amount of large woody material on site will vary. The extremes between no large woody material and excessive amounts of large woody material may occur through naturally occurring events such as wildfire and windthrow. In effect, the entire range of large woody material levels will probably occur throughout the landscape.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY - Wildlife

- Late/Early Successional Species
- Exotic Species
- Neotropical Migrant Bird Species (NTMB)
- Natural Disturbance
- Wildlife Habitats

Late/Early Successional Species

The desired trend for late-successional species is to maintain present numbers of individuals and provide suitable habitat sufficient for breeding activities to facilitate increases in those species for which declines have been observed. Maintaining natural openings and creating new ones when necessary will be important for the early successional species.

Exotic Species

The desired trend is to minimize introduction of any exotic species or the spread of ones already established, primarily in the lower river.

Neotropical Migrant Bird Species (NTMB)

Desired trends for future populations of neotropical birds include maintaining the species abundance and richness that has been observed in the watershed, and observing increases in those species for which declines have been documented.

Natural Disturbance

The desired trend is to maintain an ecosystem capable of withstanding the natural catastrophic events that will affect wildlife species numbers and distribution.

Wildlife Habitats

The desired trend is to maintain the integrity of the unique habitats and the intact blocks of late-successional habitat present. Also, to maintain and improve connectivity between these blocks and increase interior habitat acreage (where needed; analysis not completed). Maintaining openings also is critical for species dependent upon that habitat type.

ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY AND ECOLOGY: Aquatic Ecosystem

- Landslides and Surface Erosion
- Water Clarity
- Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem
- Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature
- Stream Flow
- Channel Morphology
- Fish Habitat, Distribution, and Populations

Landslides and Surface Erosion

The desired trend is to reduce sediment delivery in areas where rates are above natural levels. This trend could be enhanced by road restoration treatments such as diversion prevention, culvert capacity upgrades, other drainage treatments, fill pullback and road decommissioning.

Water Clarity

Projects intended to reduce sediment delivery and improve bank stability will also ensure continued water clarity.

Large Wood Supply Affecting the Aquatic Ecosystem

The desired trend is to accelerate reestablishment of large conifers through vegetative treatment. High priority areas include east fork of Butler Creek and the mainstem of Elk River.

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature

In areas where temperatures have increased as a result of management activities, reestablishing conifers will provide long-term shade and cooling. This is particularly important in the East Fork Butler, Bald Mountain Creek, and along the mainstem of Elk River.

Stream Flow

Although the exact effects of harvest and road construction on streamflow in the watershed are unknown, road decommissioning and drainage stabilization will restore natural streamflow patterns. Effects of harvest will diminish as vegetation continues to grow.

Channel Morphology

Desired future trends include establishment of a cooperative joint effort between private land owners and the Forest Service to restore damaged stream channels. The focus of this effort would be to restore the channel in Bald Mountain Creek and the lower Elk River below the Forest Boundary. Priority Projects would include stabilizing sediment sources such as roads in Bald Mountain and streambanks on the lower Elk River and establishing future large wood sources.

In addition to the joint effort, the focus on Federal lands is the east fork of Butler Creek. The desired future trend in this subwatershed is to reduce chronic sediment sources to allow the aggraded channels to incise and create a narrower channel with deeper pools.

Fish Habitat, Distribution and Populations

The desired trend for the Elk River watershed is a functioning ecosystem, sustaining healthy populations of anadromous and resident salmonids, non-salmonid fishes and other aquatic organisms. Elk River is the most northern large watershed in the South Coast basin under substantial Federal ownership. The health of this system is important to fisheries diversity on the Oregon Coast.

The historic assemblage of salmonids-coho salmon, fall chinook salmon and searun cutthroat trout once dominant in the lower valleys and lower Forest stream segments has changed. This change is partially due to emphasis on fall chinook salmon production for commercial and sport fishing, and habitat alterations in the lower valley from agricultural development. Restoration activities below the Forest boundary are ongoing. Restoration work on National Forest lands will complement activities downstream. These actions will help restore the biodiversity in Elk River. Aquatic systems on Federal lands should be maintained at the high end of the range of natural variability to promote recovery on the lower reaches.

Subwatersheds on National Forest will continue to be subject to major winter storms, wildfire, and other agents of change. These phenomena will cause large amounts of sediment and large wood to be transported in the system. The impact of these events on the aquatic and riparian ecosystems would be ameliorated by maintaining mature conifer and hardwood trees in riparian areas. It would be desirable to

reduce road densities in subwatersheds, with priority given to decommissioning roads in areas with high potential for sediment delivery as mapped by high watershed sensitivity.

Large wood complexes and individual pieces present in the stream channel in a range from 20 to 150 pieces per mile are desirable. These numbers vary with the geomorphology of the stream segment. Confined valley segments should generally contain fewer pieces, arranged in complexes at confined points (bottlenecks) within the channel. Low gradient unconfined segments should generally contain an average of 80 or more pieces of wood per mile in more variable configurations (Columbia Protocol, 1994). The desired trend to achieve large wood levels is through protection, enhancement and establishment of riparian vegetation and upslope areas with a potential for stream delivery. Where appropriate, silvicultural practices such as thinning and planting should be implemented to achieve desired results.

The future fish habitat condition of Elk River and tributaries would continue to be rated as good. Under the proposed NFP, wide stream buffers and reduced timber harvest activities in headwater areas will cause fish habitat to be more diverse. Pool area with quality cover for salmonids will probably increase, summer stream temperatures will decrease and better quality water will be supplied to the fish hatchery and downstream valley habitat.

The following attributes and numerical values are recommended critical elements to assess fish habitat condition in productive flats. The intent is to focus monitoring efforts on productive flats to measure habitat conditions, upslope processes and long term trends. These numbers are guidelines based on the range of natural variability of streams in the Pacific Northwest. Actual numbers should be based on site-specific analysis.

- Pool frequency will vary with the width of the channel, approaching one significant channel pool greater than 3 feet in depth every 5 to 10 channel widths, in low gradient unconfined segments
- Width to depth ratios in low gradient segments of streams will be ten or less, when dividing the mean wetted width of the channel by the maximum depth of the adjacent channel pool.
- The diversity of aquatic insects and other aquatic organisms will remain stable or increase.
- Fine sediment in the fish-bearing segments of the watershed will remain stable or decrease as roaded areas are restored and vegetative regrowth occurs.
- Large wood pieces in low gradient unconfined stream segments will range from 20 to 150 pieces per mile.

A sustainable and functioning aquatic ecosystem in Elk River will require that conservation measures and restoration activities be applied across the entire watershed and adjacent marine habitats.

Escapement Goals: Currently there are no spawning escapement goals available for Elk River salmonid species. The ODFW is in the process of compiling a South Coast Basin Plan that is scheduled to be published in 1998. These escapement goals can be used in the interim until the plan is published or until more complete and comprehensive methodologies are developed.

These escapement goals are optimum numbers (Figure 39). They represent female escapement only. They were calculated for the Siskiyou National Forest portion and does not include the lower mainstem. Since environmental conditions can be quite variable, these numbers represent a range. These figures will vary spatially and temporally depending upon current conditions, local disturbances, and ocean conditions. For methods used to determine escapement goals see Appendix K.

Figure 39: Optimum Range of Female Salmonid Escapement for the Siskiyou National Forest Portion of the Elk River.

Species	Low End	High End
Chinook salmon	2,800 females	3,100 females

Coho salmon	125 females	150 females
Winter steelhead	690 females	750 females
Cutthroat trout	1,000 females	1,200 females

FINDINGS OF FACT

Commodities

- Timber production and lumber manufacture, agriculture, commercial and sport fishing, and recreation will be the economic sectors providing the greatest employment and income to the local economy based on the resources provided from the watershed.
- Mining and special forest products will provide negligible employment and income.

Scenic

- The scenic quality of the river corridor draws on the geology, landforms, water, and vegetative features to create a "significant value" along the Federally designated Recreational and Wild sections.

Recreation

- Campgrounds at Butler Bar and Sunshine Bar are in need of maintenance or improvement. Toilets are primitive and in need of upgrading to modern standards, barrier free access for the disabled is desired, and year-round drinking water supply is needed, as well as hardening sites to protect resources.
- There is a limited number of dispersed recreation sites along the river being used currently. Further development of semi-primitive recreation opportunities along the river is unlikely.
- Recreational traffic on the main Elk River Road 5325 appears to decrease only slightly with an increase in commercial traffic.

Landscape Patterns

- Historically fire was one of the major disturbance agents affecting the watershed. The natural fire disturbance interval can be inferred to be 300 to 400 years.
- During the 19th century, fire use by native Americans, settlers, and miners combined to increase the numbers of fires, and increase the burned acreage. This shortened the disturbance interval to 100 to 300 years and created much of the vegetation patterns we see today.
- From the 1940's to the early 1990's timber harvest was a significant disturbance agent on National Forest lands. This timber harvest combined with wildfires shortened the disturbance interval to 100 to 200 years.
- With the changes in land allocations on National Forest lands timber harvest will effect only a small percentage of the watershed. Continuation of the current standards and guides to promote and protect LSR, including active fire suppression, should cause the disturbance interval to lengthen to 400 to 500 years range.
- Patch size from fire disturbances varies with position on the slope and aspect. The largest patches are high on the south facing slopes and average 280 acres.
- Low intensity fires, which are most likely to occur on north aspects or in riparian areas, often leave large trees within the forest capable of meeting LSR objectives.
- Timber harvest creates a much different disturbance pattern, the result has been regenerating stands that are single storied (like high intensity wildfires), with smaller patch sizes (10 to 40 acres) that are evenly spaced in the landscape with no elevational or aspect differentiation.
- Timber harvest (4,974 acres) on Federal lands peaked during the 1960's.
- Panther Creek Subwatershed has the greatest percent (25%) of Riparian Reserves affected by past timber harvest.
- Approximately 55% of the watershed is presently in mid to late seral structure. On Federal lands, 67% is within mid to late seral structure.

Wildlife

- Previous data have shown consistent marbled murrelet “presence” (1989-1993), “occupancy” (1992), and occupancy and presence (1994-1997) of the main Elk River and its tributaries.
- Two marbled murrelet nest trees have been found in the watershed.
- Low numbers for some neotropical migrant bird species, including Hammond's flycatcher, rufous hummingbird, and western wood peewee.
- Forest openings and sites providing forage for some species (clearcuts) will decline as the bulk of the watershed is managed for late-successional forest conditions.
- Many species of songbirds and amphibians are more strongly associated with habitat upslope from riparian areas than within the riparian habitat itself, including chestnut-backed chickadee, golden-crowned kinglet, clouded salamander, ensatina, and western red-backed salamander.
- Roads have negative impacts on wildlife, including direct mortality, increased stress levels, habitat removal, and habitat fragmentation.
- In the last two years, band-tailed pigeons have been numerous on Iron Mountain.

Landslides and Surface Erosion

- Between 1952 and 1986, road and harvest-related landslides delivered 2.2 times more sediment volume than naturally-occurring landslides.
- The number of landslides per mile of road decreased considerably for roads constructed after 1974. Road practices were improved after 1974, but 93% of the road network had already been constructed.

Water Clarity

- The water clarity of Elk River is outstanding, and is recognized as being a critical component of several river values.

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature

- Following the 1955 storm, the loss of shade trees and channel changes probably resulted in increasing summer stream temperatures on the mainstem by several degrees. After the next major storm, in 1964, further changes were evident, but significantly fewer than occurred in 1955.
- Today, the riparian area on the south bank of the mainstem remains altered from its pre-1955 condition with a larger component of hardwoods and immature conifers and less mature conifers.
- Continued temperature monitoring on the mainstem through 1996 shows that maximum summer stream temperature is decreasing.
- The majority of the heating of the Elk River appears to be occurring in the upper reaches of the mainstem, below the confluence of the North and South Fork, and 4 to 5 miles below the Fish Hatchery.
- The 1994/1996 Clean Water Act Section 303 (d) list found the mainstem of Elk River water quality limited for summer stream temperature.
- Since 1980, as stream shade recovers from past disturbance, maximum stream temperatures in Panther Creek has decreased 4 degrees F.
- Stream temperature modeling indicates that temperature at the mouth has increased 5 F to 6 F degrees as a result of timber harvest and road construction. Maximum stream temperatures on Bald Mountain Creek has remained unchanged for two decades.
- Since 1976, as stream shade recovers from past disturbance, maximum stream temperatures in Butler Creek has decreased 4 degrees F.

Stream Flow

- Milbury Creek is the most densely roaded area in Elk River with 5.1 mile per square mile of road. High road densities in some cases can change the timing and increase peak flows.

Channel Morphology

- The number of gravel bars along the mainstem increased 77% from 1940 to 1986.
- There is increasing evidence that 1955 flood had a greater effect on channel morphology than the 1964 flood.
- The adverse effects of the 1955 flood were heightened by the construction of the main access road (#5325) on the south side of Elk River in 1954.
- Below the National Forest boundary, comparison of aerial photos of the Elk River channel from 1940-1986 show increased numbers and sizes of gravel bars, loss of riparian forest, and increased widths of active channel bars.

Fisheries

- Coho salmon populations in the Elk River are depressed over historic levels.
- With the exception of coho, other salmonid populations appear to be stable.
- The lower mainstem contains the bulk of the historic coho salmon habitat.
- The upper mainstem is an important spawning and rearing area for wild chinook salmon.
- The lower mainstem is an important winter refuge and out-migration corridor for all salmonids.
- The November 1996 flood altered aquatic habitat, noticeably decreasing pool depth.
- Restoration activities on private lands are occurring and will continue.
- Steelhead seem to be more tolerant of increased sediments, therefore, increases of sediment tend to favor steelhead production over chinook and coho salmon.
- Excessive sediment from natural and management activities have decreased pool depth.
- Reduction of pool depth decreases available habitat.
- Reduction of available habitat decreases salmonid production, especially species that overwinter in freshwater habitats.
- Reducing sediment supply to more natural levels will benefit salmonid production.

DATA GAPS

Access & Travel

- Number of miles of temporary roads built and returned to a natural state within the watershed.

Landscape Patterns

- Complete mapping of Phytophthora lateralis disease spread within the watershed.
- Life span of Phytophthora lateralis spores in soil and water.
- Acres of private timber harvest listed by location and year harvested.
- Identify landforms, cutting patterns and soil conditions that contributed to windthrow of 203 acres in the Panther Creek Subwatershed.

Wildlife

- Information on peregrine falcon presence.

- Bald eagle use along the main river.
- Current status on northern spotted owls associated with activity centers.
- Information on survival and breeding activity of juvenile northern spotted owls.
- Presence information on snowy plover from Cape Blanco to Elk River.
- Presence information on two sensitive species, Pacific western big-eared bat and white-footed vole.
- Presence information/habitat use for the five woodpeckers representing wildlife species which use cavities: pileated, hairy, downy, red-breasted sapsucker, and Northern flicker.
- Presence information on the ringtail.
- Presence information on marten and fisher.
- Historical information on goshawk presence.
- Information on wildlife tree mortality from different sources, burning, windthrow, disease.
- Status and distribution of exotic species in the watershed.
- Information on the width of protection necessary for upslope riparian corridors for songbirds, small mammals, amphibians, and reptiles.
- Road density thresholds for different wildlife species.
- Status on many survey and manage species of fungi, lichens, bryophytes, mollusks, and arthropods.
- Areas for habitat enhancement in Late-Successional Reserve.

Landslides and Surface Erosion

- Air photo inventory for 1986-1997 landslides, with field measurement of sample areas. Analysis of road and harvest contribution to long-term trend in sediment yield.
- Road inventory to identify road-stream crossings with potential for drainage diversions and where culvert capacities are inadequate.
- Landslide sediment sources on private lands within the watershed
- Landslide potential on older revegetated non-system roads, including private lands within the National Forest boundary.
- Analyze interactions of roads-timber harvest in causing larger or more frequent landslides than from roads or timber harvest alone.

Riparian Canopy Disturbance and Stream Water Temperature

- Historical and current stream temperature on private land.
- Historical aerial photographs to show changes in the riparian vegetation and stream channel below the Forest boundary.

Channel Morphology

- Stream channel condition surveys on private land.
- Historical aerial photographs to show changes in the stream channel below the Forest boundary.

November 1996 Storm

- Stream gage information on the storm flow.
- Channel condition surveys.
- Post flood aerial photograph interpretation.

Fisheries

- Chum salmon escapement.
- Chum salmon smolt out-migration.
- November 1996 flood effects upon salmonid populations.
- Searun cutthroat population trends.

MANAGEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

- The Elk Wild and Scenic Management Plan, Elk Wild and Scenic River contains a listing of recommended projects in Chapter 5.

Scenic

- Identify opportunities to improve or restore scenic views along forest road 5325. This could include selectively clearing, thinning, pruning vegetation.

Recreation

- Upgrade Butler Bar and Sunshine Bar campgrounds to modern standards. These facilities should be accessible, provide drinking water, provide vault toilets, and be hardened campsites.
- Upgrade or maintain access points to the river along Forest Road 5325, including pullouts to view the river.
- Inventory conditions for dispersed and primitive campsites used along the Elk River. Manage these sites to provide dispersed semi-primitive experiences while protecting the Elk River's remarkable values.
- Recreation facilities should be designed to blend with the natural setting.

Vegetation

- Vegetation Management: Use silvicultural treatments (thinnings, management of competing vegetation, etc.) to enhance stands, specifically in Riparian Reserves and Late-Successional Reserves to more rapidly achieve the objectives for those particular allocations.
- Vegetation Management: Intensively manage stands within the Matrix land allocation utilizing such treatments as fertilization, pruning, thinning and release.

Wildlife

- An assessment for American peregrine falcon presence in the watershed should be completed.
- An assessment of bald eagle use along the main Elk River should be completed.
- Continue monitoring of northern spotted owls; seek funding for banding and/or telemetry of juveniles.
- Continue ongoing amphibian and reptile surveys, with specific emphasis on Del Norte salamander, red-legged frog, foothill yellow-legged frog, tailed frog, southern torrent salamander, and northwestern pond turtle.
- Survey headwater channels in project areas and, if tailed frogs or southern torrent salamanders are present, consider expanding Riparian Reserve boundaries.

- Survey for Pacific fisher and American marten with remote camera systems and track plate devices. Specifically, focus on the Blackberry Creek drainage for fisher.
- Continue ongoing goshawk surveys in the South Fork of Bald Mountain Creek and Bald Mountain Meadows.
- Research historical goshawk information for the watershed (sources: ODFW, Natural Heritage Foundation, local residents).
- Conduct surveys for Pacific western big-eared bat, white-footed vole, and red tree vole.
- Continue the ongoing Breeding Bird Survey routes and also begin a program of point count surveys across a range of habitats (e.g. early, mid, and late seral).
- Maintain riparian habitat with desirable hardwoods and deciduous brush species for neotropical bird populations.
- Consider expanding Riparian Reserves to include protection for upslope bird species and permanent living space for medium to larger-sized mammals. Further research is necessary to determine the appropriate corridor width for each species. Begin breeding bird point count surveys in riparian and upslope habitats in Blackberry, Panther, Red Cedar, and Sunshine Creeks, and the South and North Forks of Elk River.
- Strive for a maximum of one mile of road/square mile of land on National Forest lands in the watershed.
- Roads should be closed to motorized traffic, particularly those which bisect late-successional habitat or are near to sensitive wildlife sites (ponds, meadows, etc.). Additionally, restoring closed roads to natural habitat will benefit wildlife species. Subwatersheds to focus on initially for possible closures are Bald Mountain Creek, Panther Creek, Upper Mainstem, Butler Creek, and Blackberry Creek.
- Analyze interior habitat acreage and patch sizes; priority subwatersheds are Bald Mountain Creek, Panther Creek, Upper Mainstem, Butler Creek, and Blackberry Creek.
- Analyze habitat connections and corridors and determine what species' needs are presently being met.
- Continue active meadow management in Bald Mountain and McGribble Meadows.
- Identify areas within Late-Successional Reserve for possible habitat enhancement activities.
- Considerations with timber removal projects in Late-Successional Reserves:
 1. Commercial thinning to accelerate late-successional conditions is a high priority in northern spotted owl activity centers, particularly the two that have < 30% suitable habitat (see Figure 15). Thinning potential of an area will need to be evaluated in terms of stands that may not be nesting, roosting, foraging habitat currently and < 80 years, however, may also be serving as foraging habitat (eg. 40-80 year old stands).
 2. Commercial thinning to enhance snag and hardwood habitat for neotropical birds is a priority.
 3. Thinning of hardwood species should be avoided.
 4. Thinning of conifer and hardwood species should be avoided in the upper reaches of first order streams
 5. Port-Orford-cedar as a special forest product should be evaluated as an integral component of the ecosystem on a site by site basis.

- Consider "unique habitat restorations" as described on page 143 of the LSR Assessment (1995), including using prescribed fire in natural stands to maintain openings and fertilizing.
- As less forested stands are harvested, areas presently providing forage for black-tailed deer will become critical. Maintenance of these will be necessary and should include minimizing effects on older forest habitat by maintaining forage for a longer period of time in managed stands by opening up canopy gaps, using prescribed fire in natural stands to maintain quality forage and micro openings in the forest canopy, and seeding closed roads and other possible sites with high quality forage mixes (LSR Assessment 1995).

Landslides and Surface Erosion

- Use the roads and high watershed sensitivity map (Map 24) to identify high priority road segments for restoration treatments, including culvert/crossing upgrades and diversion dips, as well as hydrologic decommissioning.
- Use the watershed sensitivity map to identify areas that need field examination for slope stability prior to harvest.
- In areas of deep soils, evaluate the need for special harvest prescriptions (e.g. partial cuts, modified harvest layout) within the groundwater influence area to minimize potential adverse effects.

Fisheries

- Lower mainstem should be the focus for coho habitat restoration.
- Butler Creek should be the focus for restoration opportunities on Federal land.
- Inventory and replace road crossing culverts that are barriers to juvenile and adult salmonid migration.
- Focus on reducing and stabilizing sediment inputs into the Elk River, especially Butler and Bald Mountain Subwatersheds. Riparian planting, reconstructing stream crossings, decommissioning roads, controlling road-related runoff, pull back of unstable fills and innovative harvest techniques should be employed wherever possible.
- Silvicultural treatments within Riparian Reserves and uplands should be evaluated to accelerate growth of the residual stand.
- Collaborative opportunities for sharing resources for monitoring and restoration should be pursued.

ORIGINAL RECOMMENDATIONS AND ACCOMPLISHMENTS

These projects were taken directly from the original Elk River Watershed Analysis published in 1994. These recommendations still apply. The **BOLD** type indicates what has been accomplished since the original publication.

Figure 40: Recommended Projects to Promote Watershed Values

Site-specific areas for these activities would be identified at the project level.

VALUES	TOPICS	PROJECTS
COMMODITY		all projects could contribute
Amenity	Scenery	decommission roads restore viewpoints
Public Use	Recreation	upgrade recreation facilities
Environmental Quality and Ecology: Terrestrial	Vegetation	eradicate non-natives control spread of POC root disease
	Disturbance Frequency	vegetation management
	Patch Size	analyze patterns
	Large Wood - Terrestrial	revise Siskiyou Forest Plan Standards & Guidelines (see #7 below)
Environmental Quality and Ecology: Aquatic	Landslide and Erosion	restore roads with various treatments where sediment delivery potential is high
	Large Wood - Aquatic	plant conifers
	Stream Temperature	plant conifers
	Stream Flow	decommission roads stabilize road drainage
	Channel Morphology	plant conifers install structures
	Fish Habitat	decommission roads stabilize road drainage plant conifers install structures

Description of Recommended Projects

1. Restore Viewpoints: Cut vegetation that grows up and obscures scenic views along Forest Service Road 5325. **No viewpoints have been restored, although six areas have been identified and limited clearing will begin shortly.**
2. Upgrade Recreation Facilities: Upgrade and maintain access points to the river along Forest Service Road 5325, including pullouts, parking areas, and trailheads. Upgrade developed campgrounds to modern standards, with full accessibility. **No major upgrades to developed campsites have been done. Routine maintenance of roads, pullouts, access points, parking areas, campgrounds and trailheads is ongoing.**
3. Vegetation Management: Use fire and harvest as vegetation management activities, dispersed over a 50-year period, to bring the vegetation disturbance frequency back within the natural range within the Siskiyou NF portion of the watershed. Initially, this should be done only in one or two selected subwatersheds that have lower fish habitat and population values. **Restoration of Bald Mountain meadows has involved the use of harvest combined with prescribed fire. A total of 17 acres were treated in 1996 and an additional 10 acres are planned for 1998.**

4. Analyze Patterns: Examine historical and existing patch size distributions to determine size of future fire and timber management projects within the Siskiyou NF portion of the watershed. **This has been completed. The Southwest Oregon Late-Successional Reserve Assessment (10/95) included analysis of patch size and distributions.**
5. Eradicate Non-natives: Eradicate the undesirable non-native plant species gorse and tansy, within the Siskiyou NF portion of the watershed. **These projects are ongoing. Over \$6,000 has been spent from 1995 to 1997 to eradicate Scotch and French broom, tansy ragwort and gorse along roads and landings within the Elk River watershed.**
6. Implement Port-Orford-cedar Root Disease Action Plan. This includes road closures and seasonal driving restrictions; and roadside sanitation cutting, limited to trees less than 8" dbh and within 50' of the road edge. **These projects are ongoing. The Port-Orford-cedar root disease action plan is integrated into every Federal management action.**
7. Revise Siskiyou Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines: Inventory natural levels of large woody material in the four plant series in the watershed. Use this data to revise the Siskiyou Forest Plan Standards and Guidelines for leaving LWM following timber harvest. **This has been completed. The Siskiyou's "Working" Prescription Guidelines for Large Woody Material (LWM), Wildlife Reserve Trees/Snags (WRT), and Green Tree Retention (GTR) was finalized in November of 1996.**
8. Road Restoration Treatments such as diversion prevention, culvert capacity upgrades, other drainage treatments, fill pullback outsloping and road decommissioning. Road segments in high watershed sensitivity areas are highest priority. Priority roads are located in Panther Creek, Bald Mountain Creek, Purple Mountain Creek, upper North Fork Elk River, etc. **Since 1991, 10 miles of roads have been decommissioned on National Forest lands. Other roads are currently being evaluated for treatment. Road drainage stabilization projects are ongoing, including annual road maintenance contracts. See also Landslides and Erosion: Road Restoration Treatments.**
9. Inventory roads for diversion potential, culvert capacity. **All culverts >42" diameter have been located from road logs and are recommended for survey.**
10. Plant Conifers in priority areas:
 - Riparian areas where hardwoods have replaced conifers and are not tall enough to shade the channel; primarily Butler Creek, Bald Mountain Creek, and Elk River, both above and below the Forest boundary.
 - Along the lower Elk River below the Forest boundary, where vegetation removal has caused the stream banks to erode at an accelerated rate and depleted the supply of large woody material. Planting conifers and other species on the stream banks and in the riparian area will provide long-term channel stability, stream shading, and large wood.
 - In harvested areas of the East Fork Butler Creek subwatershed, where the supply of large wood is depleted.

Approximately 10 acres of conifers were planted on the mainstem of the Elk River on National Forest lands. Work completed below the forest boundary on private lands will be discussed below.
11. Install Structures: On the lower Elk River outside the Forest boundary, use natural material such as logs, root wads, and boulders to armor the stream bank and protect planted conifers. Placing natural

materials as resistance structures on the outside curves of the river meanders will help create deeper scour pools and narrow the river width while the vegetation is growing. Place logs and boulders in locations that will add complexity to the fish habitat and reestablish pools, without reducing sediment transport capacity.

Within the National Forest, conifers and hardwoods planted for bank stability and stream shade will also need protection. Natural materials placed on point bars and high gravel bars where work is feasible will provide interim stability. Large wood complexes placed at nick points in the channel gradient will also complement upslope restoration work.

In 1995, 10 logs were placed in Purple Mountain Creek. Subsequent monitoring indicated these structures held during the winter of 95-96, but failed during the November storm of 1996. No more instream structure work is planned for Purple Mountain Creek.

Below the Forest boundary, restoration of coho salmon habitat is the highest priority. This will require a cooperative effort between several Federal and state agencies and private landowners. The work will be designed for long-term restoration of the processes that create and maintain habitat, and will complement the upstream restoration on public lands.

Restoration Accomplishments on Private Lands

- Approximately 5,000 conifers (spruce, Douglas-fir and alder) planted along the mainstem and tributaries.
- Approximately 5,000 willows planted along the mainstem and tributaries.
- Approximately 15 miles of riparian fencing built along the mainstem and tributaries.
- Addition of log weirs into Anvil Creek.
- Placed LWM structures near the estuary below the 101 bridge.
- Construction of rock and log barbs to prevent bank erosion along the mainstem.
- Fish barrier removal on Bagley Creek.
- Two culverts were replaced on Bagley Creek to aid in juvenile and adult passage.
- Two jump pools were constructed to aid passage on Bagley Creek.
- The South Coast Watershed Association is cooperating with local landowners to facilitate these projects.
- Moore Mill timber company has been donating trees for these projects.

The main priority for the next few years will be the continual restoration of Bagley and Indian Creeks.

RIPARIAN RESERVE WIDTHS

Watershed analysis provides the basis for considering modification of the riparian width specified in the 1994 Record of Decision for Amendments to Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management Planning Documents (ROD), Appendix, B-13. The following discussion considers the option to modify Riparian Reserve widths in a small area of Matrix lands in the watershed. These Matrix lands comprise 7% of the total watershed within the Forest boundary, and are located in parts of Panther Creek, Blackberry Creek, and very small areas in the South Fork Elk and Upper mainstem.

Riparian Reserve widths on perennial streams must approximate those specified in the ROD, Appendix, C-30. This discussion focuses on intermittent streams, which comprise an estimated 50% of the channel network. Criteria for considering modification of widths in each subwatershed are: hillslope, riparian, and channel processes, and the subwatershed's function in the total watershed.

Figure 41: Results of Watershed Analysis for Subwatersheds in Matrix.

	Panther	Blackberry	South Fork	Upper Area
Past Channel effects from sediment	Mod	Low	Mod	Mod
Loss of large wood	31%	20%	20%	19%
Fish habitat value	High	Mod	Mod	Low

Panther Creek: Has high fish habitat values and is one of the most productive subwatersheds. The east and middle fork tributaries are the only areas in Matrix lands. Both tributary channels have been affected--the middle fork by past management activities, the east fork by a large natural landslide--and are in a state of recovery. The potential large wood supply has also been reduced (pp. 40-42). **It is recommended that interim reserve widths be maintained. For thinning to acquire desired vegetation characteristics, appropriate riparian buffer widths should be determined through site specific evaluation by an interdisciplinary project team.**

Blackberry Creek: Has only moderate fish habitat value, with a moderate steelhead population. There is no evidence that the channel has been affected by excessive sediment from any source. The moderate fish habitat value is attributed to the limited area of stream accessible to anadromous fish. Blackberry Creek does contribute cool stream temperature and large wood to Elk River, and these should be maintained (p. 45). **It is recommended that this subwatershed be considered for modification of interim reserve widths on intermittent streams. Interdisciplinary project teams should consider appropriate buffer widths based on site specific information and type of proposed activity.**

South Fork Elk and Upper Mainstem: Both areas have low fish habitat values because of the limited habitat available to anadromous fish. There is no evidence that sediment from any source has adversely affected fish habitat and there is only a small amount of Matrix land in both these areas. A portion of the groundwater influence area for the Laird Lake earthflow is included in Matrix land. **Project teams could consider appropriate buffer widths on intermittent streams based on site specific information and type of proposed activity.**

Any modification to reduce or increase buffer widths should be done at the project level by an interdisciplinary team and be based on site specific information. Support for these buffer modifications will come from the analysis utilizing the supplement to Section II of Ecosystem Analysis at the watershed scale titled "Riparian Reserve Evaluation Techniques and Synthesis." Specific information would include potentially unstable areas, nutrient cycling, habitat for riparian dependent species, and corridors for terrestrial species. This information should be transferred to a GIS database to aid future management activities. Accurate identification of channel heads will be critical in the lower basin of Blackberry Creek and upper middle Fork of Panther Creek, where steep debris avalanche or ravel-prone slopes are present. All riparian buffers should meet Aquatic Conservation Strategy Objectives, ROD, Appendices B and C.

MONITORING PLAN

Monitoring is an essential component of any management action and should be guided by the results of the watershed analysis. The 1994 Record of Decision for Amendments to the Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management Planning Document (ROD), Appendix B-32; and Siskiyou National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan (pages V-9 thru V-14) provide guidance for project monitoring.

Monitoring allows us to make decisions based on site specific information. Monitoring results will provide information for updates and revisions to both watershed analysis, and project planning and design. With a smaller federal work force, successful monitoring will depend on a cooperative effort by research stations, universities, other agencies, community groups and volunteers.

The Forest Service has been monitoring in the Elk River watershed for several years. Projects include stream temperature, measured with recording thermographs at several locations, macroinvertebrate sampling, and fish habitat surveys modeled on Hankin and Reeves. The USGS has been collecting streamflow data with its gage at the fish hatchery. In addition to on-going monitoring, several studies have been conducted by research stations and universities. Studies included landslides, erosion, channel morphology, fish populations and habitat, and provide base information for future monitoring. Most monitoring and studies have been conducted within the Forest boundary.

The Elk River Watershed Analysis team and Project Restoration Teams share the responsibility to assure that needed monitoring is accomplished. It is vital that these teams work with other agencies, the residents of Elk River and concerned citizens in neighboring communities to accomplish monitoring on the lower river. All monitoring projects should: (1) have a written plan, (2) state specific objectives, (3) be tied to the ROD, the Siskiyou Forest Plan, and the Elk River Watershed Analysis, (4) define how the data are to be collected and stored, (5) assign responsibility, (6) follow a timeline.

The following figure identifies monitoring that would provide information on the condition, maintenance, or recovery of values associated with Elk River.

Figure 42: Recommended Monitoring Projects

VALUE	TOPICS	MONITORING PROJECTS
Commodity		
Amenity	Scenery	Photo points of visual quality from viewpoints on main road
Public Use	Recreation	Number of visitors using recreation facilities
Environmental Quality and Ecology: Terrestrial	Vegetation	Location and number of non-native plants eradicated: trends/location Presence of <u>Phytophthora lateralis</u> , especially within the North and South Elk River. Effectiveness over time of riparian planting and manual release within the Riparian Reserves.
Environmental Quality and Ecology: Aquatic	Landslides and Surface Erosion	Photo Inventory followed by field sampling.
	Large Wood - Aquatic	Riparian stocking surveys Large Wood in channel
	Stream Temperature	Stream Shade - Solar Pathfinder thermographs
	Channel Morphology	Photo points Channel cross sections
	Fish Habitat	Hankin and Reeves type survey Macroinvertebrate sampling Photographic inventory of aquatic and riparian restoration projects

High Priority Locations and Types of Monitoring

1. Continue monitoring that is presently occurring in the watershed.
2. Lower Elk River:
 - Stream Temperature monitoring.
 - Channel Morphology - photo points and/or channel cross sections
 - Fish Habitat - Photo inventory of aquatic and riparian restoration projects.

3. Elk River productive flat above the Forest Boundary
Photo points and/or channel cross sections
4. Bald Mountain Creek:
Landslides photo inventory
Channel Morphology - photo points and/or channel cross sections on low-gradient reaches of the mainstem
5. East fork of Butler Creek:
Landslides photo inventory
Channel Morphology - photo points and/or channel cross sections
6. Blackberry Creek
Spawning surveys and juvenile counts to see if contract work constructing rock weirs were successful in meeting project objectives.

Wildlife Monitoring

1. Number and distribution of green trees left in harvested areas.
Photo points
Classify remaining wildlife trees (I, II, III, etc.)
2. Snags and coarse woody debris.
Plot data collected in forested stands of different ages.
3. Size, location, spatial distribution, species composition, and development of late-successional and old-growth forests.
GIS mapping and analysis of patch sizes, connections, and corridors.
4. Abundance and diversity of species associated with late-successional forest communities.
This will be done through continued presence/probable absence surveys.
Continue northern spotted owl activity center monitoring.
5. Percent of land area affected by exotic species.
Continue documentation of sightings, including photographs, if possible.
6. Commercial thinning in Late-Successional Reserves.
Point count surveys before and after.

References

- Anderson, John. 1996. Regional Economic Profile, Region 7, Coos and Curry Counties. State of Oregon, Employment Department. 77pp.
- Atzet, T. and Wheeler, D., 1982, Historical and Ecological Perspectives on Fire Activity in the Klamath Mountains Geological Province of the Rogue River and Siskiyou National Forests, USDA - Forest Service, Portland, Oregon. R6-Range-102-1982.
- Bald Eagle Working Team for Oregon and Washington. 1990. Working Implementation Plan for Bald Eagle Recovery in Oregon and Washington. Washington Department of Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. 74 pp.
- Bender, R. , 1970. Coast Rivers Investigation Information Report, 70-10. Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, p.7.
- Beschta, R.L., R.E. Bilby, G.W. Brown, L.B. Holtby, and T.D. Hofstra. 1987. Stream temperature and aquatic habitat: fisheries and forestry interactions. Pages 191-232 in Salo and Cundy (1987).
- Brown, E.R., ed. 1985. Management of Wildlife and Fish Habitats in Forests of Western Oregon and Washington, Part 2-Appendices. Publication No.: R6-F&WL-192-1985. USDA Forest Service and USDI Bureau of Land Management, Portland, Oregon.
- Boreschenko, A. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.
- Burnett, K. 1997. Oral communication with Max Yager at the USDA Forest Services Pacific Northwest Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Burt, W.H. and R.P. Grossenheider. 1976. The Peterson Field Guide Series: A Field Guide to the Mammals, 3rd edition. Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, Massachusetts.
- Bury, R.B. 1988. Habitat Relationships and Ecological Importance of Amphibians and Reptiles. Streamside Management: Riparian Wildlife and Forest Interactions. Seattle, Washington: University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources. pp. 61-76.
- Bury, R.B. and P.S. Corn. 1988. Responses of Aquatic and Streamside Amphibians to Timber Harvest: A Review. Streamside Management: Riparian Wildlife and Forest Interactions. Seattle, Washington: University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources. pp. 165-181.
- Carey, A.B. 1991. The biology of arboreal rodents in Douglas-fir forests. PNW-GTR-276 USDA Forest Service.
- Chen, Glenn, 1990 November, Turbidity Source from Bald Mountain Creek, Elk River Basin: report, 3 p.
- Cole, E.C. et al. 1997. Response of amphibians to clearcutting, burning, and glyphosate application in the Oregon coast range. J.Wildl. Manage. 61(3):656-664.
- Collins, J. 1982. Summary of SW Region Cliff Survey for Peregrine Falcons. Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife, Roseburg, Oregon. 6 pp.
- _____. 1987. Peregrine Falcon Habitat Survey, Southwest Oregon. Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife, Roseburg, Oregon. 6 pp.

Columbia River Basin Task Force Team, 1994. Monitoring Protocol for the Upper Columbia River Basin, Fourth Revision, Glenn Chen editor, National Aquatic Ecosystem Monitoring Center. Utah.

Corn, P.S. and R.B. Bury. 1986. Habitat use and terrestrial activity by red tree voles (Arborimus longicaudus) in Oregon. J. Mammal. 67:404-406.

Cross, S.P. 1985. Responses of Small Mammals to Forest Riparian Perturbations: Paper presented at the North American Riparian Conference. (University of Arizona, Tucson, April 16-18, 1985).

Cross, S.P. 1988. Riparian systems and small mammals and bats. Streamside Management: Riparian Wildlife and Forest Interactions. Seattle, Washington: University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources, 1988. pp. 93-112.

Ebel, W. J., C. D. Becker, J. W. Mullan, and H. L. Raymond. 1989. The Columbia River: toward a holistic understanding. Proceedings of international large river symposium (LARS), Toronto, Canada. D.P. Dodge editor. Pages 205-219.

Edge, W.D. and C.L. Marcum. 1991. Topography ameliorates the effects of roads and human disturbance on elk. Elk Vulnerability Symp., Montana State University, Bozeman, MT, April 10-12, 1991.

Evink, G., Ziegler, D., Garrett, P., and Berry, J. (eds). 1996. Transportation and Wildlife: Reducing Wildlife Mortality and Improving Wildlife Passageways Across Transportation Corridors. Proceedings of the Florida Department of Transportation/Federal Highway Administration Transportation- Related Wildlife Mortality Seminar-Report No. FHWA-PD-96-041, April 30-May 2, 1996, Orlando, Florida. 335 pp.

Farrell, T. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

A Federal Agency Guide for Pilot Watershed Analysis, Version 1.2. 1994. 203 pp.

Federal Register. 1992. Critical Habitat Designation for the Northern Spotted Owl. Federal Register, Vol. 57, No. 10.

Federal Register. 1996. Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants; 90-Day Finding for a Petition to List the Fisher in the Western United States as Threatened. Federal Register, Vol. 61, No. 42, 50 CFR Part 17.

Federal Register. 1996. Critical Habitat Designation for the Marbled Murrelet. Federal Register, Vol. 61, No. 102.

FEMAT, 1993. Forest Ecosystem Management: An Ecological , Economic and Social Assessment. Report of the Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team.

Flizar, K. 1997. Oral communication with Max Yager at the Elk River Hatchery, Port Orford, Oregon.

Ford. 1993. Oral communication with Mary Lou Schnoes; Galice Ranger District, Grants Pass, OR 97526

Forest Ecosystem Management: An Ecological, Economic, and Social Assessment. 1993. Report of the Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team.

Franklin, J. and Forman, R., Creating landscape patterns by forest cutting: Ecological consequences and principles, Landscape Ecology vol. 1, no. 1 pp. 5-18.

French, K. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

- Geist, V. Behavior. In: Schmidt, J.; Gilbert D. comps., eds. Big game of North America: ecology and management. Harrisburg, PA: Stackpole Books; 1978: 283-296.
- Grant, G.E., 1988, The RAPID technique: A new method for evaluating downstream effects of forest practices on stream channels: USDA-FS General Technical Report PNW-GTR-220, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, Oregon.
- Hagar, J.C., McComb, W.C., and Emmingham, W.H. 1996. Bird communities in commercially thinned and unthinned Douglas-fir stands of western Oregon. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 1996, 24(2):353-366.
- Harbert, S. 1993. Memo - Elk River LWM Inventory. Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.
- Harden, D.R., Janda, R.J., and Nolan, K.M., 1978. Mass movement and storms in the drainage basin of Redwood Creek, Humboldt County, California - A Progress Report: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 78-486, 161 p.
- Harmon, M.E., Franklin, J.F., Swanson, F.J., Sollins, P., Gregory, S.V., Lattin, J.D., Anderson, N.H., Cline, S.P., Aumen, N.G., Sedell, J.R., Lienkaemper, G.W., Cromack, K., Cummins, K. W., 1985. Ecology of Coarse Woody Debris in Temperate Ecosystems. *Advances in Ecological Research*, Volume 15. p 133-302.
- Heaney, J. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.
- Hemstrom, M. and Cissel, J., 1991, Evaluating alternative landscape patterns over time - an example from the Willamette National Forest in Oregon, *Proceedings of the Society of American Foresters*, Aug. 4-7 1991 National Meeting., San Francisco, California.
- Herrington, R.E. 1988. Talus Use by Amphibians and Reptiles in the Pacific Northwest. Paper presented at symposium, Management of Amphibians, Reptiles, and Small Mammals in North America. (Flagstaff, AZ, July 19-21, 1988.)
- Hofsess, J. 1996. Oral communication with Dave Shea; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.
- Hopp, K. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.
- Huntington, C.W., W. Nehlsen, and J. Bowers. 1996. A survey of healthy native stocks of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest and California. *Fisheries* 21(3):6-14.
- Jones, J.A. and G.E. Grant, Peak Flow Responses to Clearcutting and Roads, Western Cascades, Oregon, parts I and II. 1993. Oregon State University and Pacific Northwest Research Station, Corvallis, OR., 80 pp.
- Knopf, F.L., et al. 1988. Conservation of riparian ecosystems in the United States. *Wilson Bull.* 100:272-284.
- Leonard, W.P., H.A. Brown, L.L.C. Jones, K.R. McAllister and R.M. Storm. 1993. Amphibians of Washington and Oregon. Seattle Audubon Society, Seattle, Washington.
- Lovallo, M.J. and E.M. Anderson. 1996. Bobcat movements and home ranges relative to roads in Wisconsin. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 1996, 24(1):71-76.

Lukas, J. and Carter, 1984. Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife's Annual Report. ODFW publication, Newport, Oregon.

Lyon, L.J. and J.V. Baile. Influences of timber harvesting and residue management on big game. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-90. Ogden, UT: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station; 1980: 441-453.

Mangan, L.S. and J.E. Pagel. 1988. A peregrine falcon nesting habitat survey in portions of Curry and Coos Counties, Oregon. Bureau of Land Management, Coos Bay, Oregon. 6 pp. + additional map.

Maser, C. 1966. Life histories and ecology of Phenacomys albipes, Phenacomys longicaudus, Phenacomys silvicola. M.S. Thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon. 221 pp.

Maser, C. (et al.). 1981. Natural History of Oregon Coast Mammals. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station. General Technical Report PNW-133.

McGinnis, Wendy J.; Phillips, Richard H.; and Connaughton, Kent P. 1996. County Portraits of Oregon and Northern California. PNW-GTR-377, Portland, Oregon. U.S.D.A., Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station. 315pp.

McGarigal, K. and W.C. McComb. 1992. Streamside versus upslope breeding bird communities in the central Oregon coast range. J. Wildl. Manage. 56(1):10-21.

McHugh, M.H., 1985. Notes on Riparian Corridor of Bald Mountain Creek, 4 p. plus figures.

McHugh, M.H., 1987. Landslide Occurrence in the Elk and Sixes River Basins, Southwest Oregon: M.S. thesis, Oregon State University, 106 p.

McSwain, M.D., 1987. Summer Stream Temperatures and Channel Characteristics of a Southwestern Oregon Coastal Stream, M.S. thesis, Oregon State University, 99 p.

Miller, G. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Morrison, P.H., and Swanson, F.J., 1990, Fire history and pattern in a Cascade Range Landscape. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-GTR-254.

Muhs, D.R., Kelsey, H.M., Miller, G.H., Kennedy, G.L., Whelan, J.F., and McInelly, G.W., 1990. Age estimates and uplift rates for late Pleistocene marine terraces: Southern Oregon portion of the Cascadia forearc: Journal of Geophysical Research, V. 95, P. 6685-6698.

Nehlsen, W. Williams, J.E., Lichatowich, J.A., 1991. Pacific salmon at the crossroads: stocks at risk from California, Oregon, Idaho, and Washington: Fisheries, v.16, p.4-21.

Nicholas, J.W., and D.G. Hankin. 1988. Chinook salmon populations in Oregon coastal river basins: description of life histories and assessment of recent trends in run strength. Information Report 88-1, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, Corvallis.

Nickelson, T.E., Nicholas, J.W., McGie, A.M., Lindsay, R.B., Bottom, D.L., Kaiser, R.J., Jacobs, S.E., 1992. Status of anadromous salmonids in Oregon coastal basins, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, Portland, 83 p.

Nowak, R.M. 1991. Walker's Mammals of the World, Fifth Edition, Volume II. The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Maryland, 1,629 pp.

Nussbaum, R.A. (et al.). 1983. Amphibians and Reptiles of the Pacific Northwest. A Northwest Naturalist Book, University of Idaho Press. 332 pp.

Olson, D.H., ed. 1996. Draft-Survey Protocols for Component/Strategy 2 Amphibian Species. Pacific Northwest Research Station, Olympia, WA. 73 pp.

Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife. 1994. Final Draft-Oregon Conservation Program for the Western Snowy Plover (Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus). Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife, Portland, OR. 80 pp.

Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife. 1996. Oregon Furbearer Trapping and Hunting Regulations: July 1, 1996 through June 30, 1998. Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife, Portland, OR. 8 pp.

Pagel, J.E. 1991. Ground reconnaissance of peregrine falcon habitat in Coos and Curry County; following helicopter assessment of cliffs. Rogue River National Forest, Medford, Oregon. 6 pp.

_____. 1992. Protocol for observing known and potential peregrine falcon eyries in the Pacific Northwest. IN Pagel, J.E. (ed). Proceedings: symposium on peregrine falcons in the Pacific Northwest. Rogue River National Forest.

_____. 1998. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Park, C.S., 1993. Shadow Stream Temperature Management Program User's Manual, V 2.3. 22 pp.

Phillips, C. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Pratt, R. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Ralph, C.J., S.K. Nelson, J.M. Shaughnessy, and S.L. Miller. 1993. Methods for Surveying Marbled Murrelets in Forests. Pacific Seabird Group Marbled Murrelet Technical Committee.

Record of Decision for Amendment to Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management Planning Documents within the Range of the Northern Spotted Owl, 1994.

Reeves, G.H., 1984. Distribution of Fish and Woody Debris in Lower Bald Mountain Creek, 6 p.

Reeves, G.H., Beschta, R.L., Swanson, F.J., McHugh, M.H., and McSwain, M.D., 1987. The Elk River Basin: An Integrated Investigation of Forest Management Impacts on Fish Habitat: Oregon Riparian Zone Meeting, p.47-51

Reeves, G.H., 1988. Distribution and Abundance of Fish and Fish Habitat in Upper Elk River 1985-1986, Draft Report, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Corvallis, OR.

Reeves, G.H., 1989, Distribution Patterns of Fish in the Elk River Basin, Coastal Oregon Productivity Enhancement, vol. x, p. 4-6.

Reimers, P., 1993. Oral communication with Glenn Chen.

Ricks, C.L., 1985. Flood History and Sedimentation at the Mouth of Redwood Creek, Humboldt County, California: Redwood National Park Technical Report 15, 154 p.

Rogers, J. 1996. Oral communication with Dave Shea; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Ryan, S.E., 1987, Characterization of Channel and Valley Floor for Red Cedar Creek, Panther Creek, and North Fork Elk River: Coastal Oregon Productivity Enhancement (COPE)-sponsored summer 1987 project: (data on computer disk).

Ryan-Burkett, S.E., 1989, Riparian Canopy and Channel Response to Hillslope Disturbance in Elk River Basin, Southwest Oregon, M.S. thesis, Oregon State University.

Ryan, S.E. and Grant, G.E., 1991. Downstream Effects of Timber Harvesting on Channel Morphology in Elk River Basin, Oregon: *Journal of Environmental Quality*: vol. 20, no. 1, pp. 60-72.

Scott, S.L., ed. 1983. *Field Guide to the Birds of North America-Second Edition*. National Geographic Society. 464 pp.

Sharp, B.E. 1992. Neotropical Migrants on National Forests in the Pacific Northwest. USFS Report.

Shea, D. 1996. Black Bears on the Powers Ranger District. Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Shea, D., 1997. Oral communication with Max Yager at the Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest, Powers, Oregon.

Spence, B.C., G.A. Lomnicky, R. M. Hughes, and R.P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501-96-6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp. , Corvallis, OR., 356 p.

Spies, T., and Franklin, J., 1988, Old Growth and Forest Dynamics in the Douglas-Fir Region of Western Oregon and Washington, *Natural Areas Journal*, Volume 8 (3), pages 190-200.

Spies, T., and Franklin, J., 1989, Gap Characteristics and Vegetation Response in Coniferous Forests of the Pacific Northwest, *Ecology*, Vol. 70, No. 3, pp. 543-545.

Spies, T., and Franklin, J., 1991, The Structure of Natural Young, Mature, and Old-Growth Douglas-Fir Forests in Oregon and Washington, *Wildlife and Vegetation of Unmanaged Douglas-fir Forests*, USDA - Forest Service, PNW Research Station, General Technical Report PNW-GTR-285.

Stankey, G.H., Clark, R.N. 1992. *Social Aspects of New Perspectives in Forestry: A Problem Analysis*. Milford, Pennsylvania: Grey Towers Press.

Steinblums, I.J., Froelich, H.A., and Lyons, J.K., 1984. Designing Stable Buffer Strips for Stream Protection: *Journal of Forestry*, vol. 82, p. 49-52.

Storm, R.M. and W.P. Leonard, eds. 1995. *Reptiles of Washington and Oregon*. Seattle Audubon Society, Seattle, Washington, 176 pp.

Stravers, J. and A. Barna. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell, Powers Ranger District, Powers, Oregon.

Sullivan, K., Lisle, T.E., Dolloff, C.A., Grant, G.E., Reid, L.M., 1987. Stream Channels: the Link between Forests and Fishes: in Salo, Ernest O., and Cundy, Terrance W., eds. *Streamside Management: Forestry and Fisheries Interactions*.

Susac, G. 1993. Oral communication regarding personal interview with B. Marsh.

Susac, G. 1997. Oral communication with Max Yager at the ODFW Corvallis research laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.

Swanson, F., Jones, J., Wallin, D., and Cissel, J., Natural Variability - Implications for Ecosystem Management, Eastside Forest Ecosystem Health Assessment - in press., USDA - Forest Service, Portland, Oregon.

Toman, J. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service. 1984. Blackberry Creek stream survey in cooperation with Pacific Northwest Research Station. On file at the Powers Ranger District, Powers, Oregon.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service. 1989. Land and Resource Management Plan, Siskiyou National Forest. Siskiyou National Forest, 200 N.E. Greenfield Rd, P.O. Box 440, Grants Pass, Oregon.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service and U.S.D.I. Bureau of Land Management. 1994. Final Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement on Management of Habitat for Late-Successional and Old-Growth Forest Related Species Within the Range of the Northern Spotted Owl. Portland, Oregon.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service, U.S.D.I. Bureau of Land Management, Fish & Wildlife Service, National Park Service. 1990. A Conservation Strategy for the Northern Spotted Owl, Interagency Scientific Committee to Address the Conservation of the Northern Spotted Owl (ISC). Portland, Oregon.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service, U.S.D.I. Bureau of Land Management, Fish & Wildlife Service, National Park Service, U.S.D.C. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, and Environmental Protection Agency. 1993. Forest Ecosystem Management: An Ecological, Economic, and Social Assessment, Report of the Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team, Portland, Oregon.

U.S.D.A. Forest Service. 1994. Management Plan, Elk and Wild Scenic River. Siskiyou National Forest and Oregon State Parks and Recreation Department.

U.S.D.I. Bureau of Land Management (Medford District) and U.S.D.A. Forest Service (Siskiyou National Forest). 1995. Southwest Oregon Late-Successional Reserve Assessment. Medford and Grants Pass, Oregon.

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. 1982. Pacific Coast Recovery Plan for the American Peregrine Falcon. U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, Denver, Colorado. 87 pp.

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. 1986. Recovery Plan for the Pacific Bald Eagle. U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon. 160 pp.

U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. 1995. Draft Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*) (Washington, Oregon and California population) Recovery Plan. Portland, Oregon. 171 pp.

Van Dyke, D. 1997. Oral communication with Betsy Howell; Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Van Dyke, F.B. et al. 1986. Reactions of mountain lions to logging and human activity. J. Wildl. Manage. 50: 95-102.

Van Wagner, C.E., 1978, Age-class distribution and the forest fire cycle, Canadian Journal of Forest Resources, 8: 220-227.

Vroman, D. 1994. Some Comments Related to Neotropical Migrant Bird Populations, Riparian Areas, and the Watershed Analysis Process. USDA Forest Service, Powers Ranger District, Powers, Oregon. 2 pp.

Wassar, S.K. et al. 1997. Noninvasive Physiological Measures of Disturbance in the Northern Spotted Owl. Conservation Biology, Pages 1019-1022, Volume 11, No. 4, August 1997.

Webb, L. and Shea, D. 1990. Amphibians, Reptiles, and Mammals of the Powers Ranger District. Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Webb, L. and Shea, D. 1991. Birds of the Powers Ranger District, Powers Ranger District, Siskiyou National Forest.

Werschkul, D.F. and Swisher, O.D. 1983. Birds and Small Mammals of Southwestern Oregon: The Tanoak Forest. An Oregon Non-Game Project, Powers Ranger District, Powers, Oregon. 29 pp.

Zielinski, W.J. and Kucera, T.E., technical editors. 1995. American Marten, Fisher, Lynx, and Wolverine: Survey Methods for Their Detection. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-157. Albany, CA: Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 163 pp.

Appendix A: Elk River Management Land Allocations

Management Land Allocations across the Watershed

NFP Land Allocations	Siskiyou Forest Plan Land Allocations	Allocation Number	Acres
Congressionally Reserved	Wilderness	MA-1	9,395
Congressionally Reserved	Wild River	MA-2	622
Administratively Withdrawn	Botanical	MA-4	1,313
Administratively Withdrawn	Back Country Recreation	MA-6	9
Administratively Withdrawn	Supplemental Resource	MA-7	2,121
Late-Successional Reserve	Designated Wildlife Habitat	MA-8	22,127
Administratively Withdrawn	Special Wildlife Site	MA-9	63
Congressionally Reserved	Scenic/Recreation River	MA-10	3,181
Riparian Reserve	Riparian	MA-11	1,533
Matrix	Retention Visual	MA-14	21
Matrix	General Forest	MA-14	4,800
Private	Private		2,956

* A description of the land allocation objectives can be found in the NFP Record of Decision.

Appendix A: Elk River Land Management Allocations (cont.)

Management Land Allocations by Subwatershed

NFP Land Allocations	Siskiyou Forest Plan Land Allocation	31H	31I	31G	31F	31E	31D	31C	31B	31A
Congressionally Reserved	Wilderness				1,923			3,745	3,727	
Congressionally Reserved	Wild River	588	34					<1		
Administratively Withdrawn	Botanical	<1	1,312							
Administratively Withdrawn	Back Country Recreation								6	
Administratively Withdrawn	Supplemental Resource	1,216	<1		<1		<1		904	
Administratively Withdrawn	Special Wildlife Site	<1	14	19		26			4	
Congressionally Reserved	Scenic/Recreation River	<1	20	54	20	58	44	1,891	1,094	<1
Riparian Reserve	Riparian		34	772	3	653	71		<1	<1
Matrix	Retention Visual		18						3	<1
Matrix	General Forest	<1	265	2,024		2,343	78	87	1	1
Private	Private					191	1,478		397	890
Late-Successional Reserve	Designated Wildlife Habitat	4,266	3,229	92	2,388	2,521	4,289	3,072	1,206	1,064

* Acres summarized in this table include only those acres that are located within the Siskiyou National Forest boundary within the Elk River Watershed.

Appendix B: Elk River Seral Stage Classifications

Definitions of Seral Stages:

Non-Forest: Consists of areas such as pastures, rock outcrops, gravel bars, etc.

Pioneer: Consists of species capable of coming in open disturbed areas.

(1) Generally less than 50 years old.

Early Seral: Usually rapidly changing plant community.

(1) Stage in forest development that includes seedling, sapling, and pole-sized trees.

(2) Average age is 100 years old, with a range of 50 to 150 years old.

Mid Seral: Climax species dominates regeneration and understory layer and some are starting to make it into the overstory layer.

(1) Average age is 150 years old, with a range from 100 to 200 years.

Late Seral: Often slowly changing plant community.

(1) Greater than 200 years old.

Seral Stage Acres by Subwatershed

Subwatershed	Non-Forest	Pioneer	Early	Mid	Late
Lower	3864	1056	5292	687	523
Middle	3	872	2060	2194	2217
Upper	2	906	2094	3536	2257
Bald Mtn.	21	1075	1677	2362	1589
Panther	6	1037	943	2170	1649
Butler	35	642	609	1421	1626
Blackberry	8	400	336	1457	759
South Fork	40	560	1465	1788	1074
North Fork	3	369	1130	2935	1635

Percent of each Subwatershed within each Seral Stage

Subwatershed	Non-Forest	Pioneer	Early	Mid	Late
Lower	34%	9%	46%	6%	5%
Middle	0%	12%	28%	30%	30%
Upper	0%	10%	24%	40%	26%
Bald Mtn.	0%	16%	25%	35%	24%
Panther	0%	18%	16%	37%	29%
Butler	1%	15%	14%	33%	37%
Blackberry	0%	14%	11%	49%	26%
South Fork	1%	11%	30%	36%	22%
North Fork	0%	6%	19%	48%	27%

**Appendix C: Exotic Plant Species Present
In the Elk River Watershed**

GRASSES, SEDGES, RUSHES

Silver Hairgrass	AICA
Meadow Foxtail	ALPR
European Beachgrass	AMAR
Sweet Vernalgrass	ANOD
Slender Oat	AVBA
Quaking Grass	BRMI
Soft Brome	BRMO
Ripgut Brome	BRR1
Cheatgrass	BRTE
Crested Dogtail	CYCR
Dogtail Grass	CYEC
Orchardgrass	DAGL
Crabgrass	DISA
Alta Tall Fescue	FEAR3
Foxtail Fescue	FEME
Nitgrass	GAVE2
Velvetgrass	HOLA
Toadrush	JUBU
Annual Rye	LOMU
Perennial Rye	LOPE2
Timothy	PHPR
Annual Beardgrass	POMO
Kentucky Bluegrass	POPR

SHRUBS

French Broom	CYMO3
Scotch Broom	CYSC
Fleeceflower	POCU
Sweetbriar Rose	ROEG
Himalayan Blackberry	RUDI
Evergreen Blackberry	RULA2
Gorse	ULEU

FORBS

Scarlet Pimpernel	ANAR3
Chamomile	ANCO
English Daisy	BEPE
Oxeye Daisy	CHLE2
Canada Thistle	CICA
Chicory	CIIN
Poison Hemlock	COMA2
Queen Anne's Lace	DACA4
Foxglove	DIPU
Teasel	DISY
Crane's Bill	ERCI
Coast Fireweed	ERPR
Dovefoot Geranium	GEMO
English Ivy	HEHE
Klamathweed	HYPE
Cat's Ear	HYRA
Everlasting Pea	LALA3
Bird's Foot Trefoil	LOCO3
White Sweet Clover	MEAL
Yellow Sweet Clover	MEOF
Pennyroyal	MEPU
Parentucellia	PAVI
English Plantain	PLLA
Common Plantain	PLMA
Curled Pondweed	POCR
Creeping Buttercup	RARE
Sheep Sorrel	RUAC
Curley Dock	RUCR
Burnet	SAMI2
Soapwort	SAOF2
Tansy	SEJA
Common Groundsel	SEVU
Sowthistle	SOAR
Chickweed	STME
Red Clover	TRPR
Hop Clover	TRPR2
Salsify	TRPR4
White Clover	TRRE
Moth Mullein	VEBL
Common Mullein	VETH

Appendix D: Elk River Land Ownership

Elk River Land Ownership Codes:

Code	Land owner	Code	Land owner
AP	Al Pierce Co.	MP	Private Landowner (40-160 acres)
BI	Blanco, Inc.	MR	NB Marsh Ranch
BP	Private Landowner (160 acres+)	OR	State of Oregon
BT	Broken tree Corp.	PC	Paul Compton
CE	Crook Estates	PF	Port Orford Rural Fire District
CH	Coastal Harvesters, Inc.	RR	Reservation Ranch
DF	Daniel Fugate	SC	South Coast Lbr. Co.
EL	Elite Timber	SP	Private Landowner (>40 acres)
FW	F. Willis Smith	ST	Senecca Timber
JG	Jack Guerin	US	U.S. Government (BLM and USFS)
KR	Knapp Ranches, Inc.	WB	Westbrook
LR	Littrell Ranch, LLC	WR	Wahl Ranches, Co.
MM	Moore Mill		

Elk River Land Ownership Acres:

Landowner	Acres	Landowner	Acres
AP	1075	MP	2430
BI	27	MR	802
BP	725	OR	388
BT	79	PC	90
CE	171	PF	105
CH	538	RR	326
DF	150	SC	563
EL	32	SP	1216
FW	234	ST	170
JG	11	US	45996
KR	689	WB	198
LR	545	WR	1070
MM	758		

Appendix E: Wildlife Species of the Elk River Watershed

Common Name	Scientific Name	Status*/Locations**
<u>Amphibians--</u>		
Family Ranidae		
Red-legged frog	<i>Rana aurora</i>	Common; Bluebird Lake, Panther Lake, Mt. Wells
Foothill yellow-legged frog	<i>Rana boylei</i>	Common; Elk River, Panther Cr.
Family Hylidae		
Pacific treefrog	<i>Hyla regilla</i>	Abundant; Panther Lake
Family Leiopelmatidae		
Tailed frog	<i>Ascaphus truei</i>	Occasional; Elk River tributaries
Family Dicamptontidae		
Pacific giant salamander	<i>Dicamptodon ensatus</i>	Common; Laird Lake, Bald Mt. Cr.
Oregon salamander (ensatina)	<i>Ensatina eschscholtzi</i>	Common; Laird Lake, Bald Mt. pumper fill
Family Ambystomatidae		
Northwestern salamander	<i>Ambystoma gracile</i>	Common; Bluebird Lake, Bald Mt. pumper fill
Family Rhyacotritonidae		
Olympic (torrent) salamander	<i>Rhyacotriton olympicus</i>	Common, cascades along Elk River
Plethodontidae		
Del Norte salamander	<i>Plethodon elongatus</i>	Rare; Elk River
Western red-backed salamander	<i>Plethodon vehiculum</i>	Occasional; Elk River
Clouded salamander	<i>Aneides ferreus</i>	Common; Elk River
Family Salamandridae		
Rough-skinned newt	<i>Taricha granulosa</i>	Abundant; many sites
<u>Reptiles--</u>		
Family Testudinidae		
Northwestern pond turtle	<i>Clemmys marmorata marmorata</i>	Rare; Bluebird Lake
Family Iguanidae		
Western fence lizard	<i>Sceloporus occidentalis</i>	Abundant; landings, clearcuts
Sagebrush lizard	<i>Sceloporus graciosus</i>	Status unknown
Family Scincidae		
Western skink	<i>Eumeces skiltonianus</i>	Status unknown
Family Anguidae		
Northern alligator lizard	<i>Elgaria coerulea</i>	Common; landings
Southern alligator lizard	<i>Elgaria multicarinata</i>	Status unknown
Family Boidae		
Rubber boa	<i>Charina bottae</i>	Occasional; Elk River, higher elevations
Family Colubridae		
Ringneck snake	<i>Diadophis punctatus</i>	Status unknown
Sharp-tailed snake	<i>Contia tenuis</i>	Status unknown

Gopher snake	<i>Pituophismelanoleucus</i>	Status unknown
Western yellow-bellied racer	<i>Coluber constrictor</i>	Status unknown
Northwestern garter snake	<i>Thamnophis ordinoides</i>	Occasional; upland areas
Common garter snake	<i>Thamnophis sirtalis</i>	Common; roads, upland areas
Western terrestrial garter snake	<i>Thamnophis elegans</i>	Status unknown
Aquatic garter snake	<i>Thamnophis couchi</i>	Status unknown
Mountain kingsnake	<i>Lampropeltis zonata</i>	Hypothetical
Common kingsnake	<i>Lampropeltis getulus</i>	Hypothetical

Birds--

Loons--Family Gaviidae

Common Loon	<i>Gavia immer</i>	Rare
-------------	--------------------	------

Grebes--Family Podicipedidae

Western Grebe	<i>Aechmophorus occidentalis</i>	Rare
---------------	----------------------------------	------

Horned Grebe	<i>Podiceps auritus</i>	Rare
--------------	-------------------------	------

Cormorants--Family Phalacrocoracidae

Double-crested Cormorant	<i>Phalacrocorax auritus</i>	Rare
--------------------------	------------------------------	------

Hérons--Family Ardeidae

Great Blue Heron	<i>Ardea herodias</i>	Common
------------------	-----------------------	--------

Green-backed Heron	<i>Butorides striatus</i>	Uncommon
--------------------	---------------------------	----------

Great Egret	<i>Casmerodius albus</i>	Uncommon
-------------	--------------------------	----------

Swans, Geese, Ducks--Family Anatidae

Tundra Swan	<i>Cygnus columbianus</i>	Rare
-------------	---------------------------	------

Canada Goose	<i>Branta canadensis</i>	Rare
--------------	--------------------------	------

Mallard	<i>Anas platyrhynchos</i>	Common
---------	---------------------------	--------

Green-winged Teal	<i>Anas crecca</i>	Uncommon
-------------------	--------------------	----------

Cinnamon Teal	<i>Anas cyanoptera</i>	Rare
---------------	------------------------	------

Wood Duck	<i>Aix sponsa</i>	Uncommon
-----------	-------------------	----------

Ring-necked Duck	<i>Aythya collaris</i>	Uncommon
------------------	------------------------	----------

Bufflehead	<i>Bucephala albeola</i>	Rare
------------	--------------------------	------

Common Merganser	<i>Mergus merganser</i>	Common
------------------	-------------------------	--------

Hooded Merganser	<i>Lophodytes cucullatus</i>	Uncommon
------------------	------------------------------	----------

Coots--Family Rallidae

American Coot	<i>Fulica americana</i>	Uncommon
---------------	-------------------------	----------

Plovers--Family Charadriidae

Snowy Plover	<i>Charadrius alexandrinus</i>	Rare
--------------	--------------------------------	------

Killdeer	<i>Charadrius vociferus</i>	Uncommon
----------	-----------------------------	----------

Greater Yellowlegs	<i>Tringa melanoleuca</i>	Rare
--------------------	---------------------------	------

Spotted sandpiper	<i>Actitis macularia</i>	Common
-------------------	--------------------------	--------

Red-necked Phalarope	<i>Phalaropus lobatus</i>	Rare
----------------------	---------------------------	------

Red Phalarope	<i>Phalaropus fulicaria</i>	Accidental
---------------	-----------------------------	------------

Common Snipe	<i>Gallinago gallinago</i>	Uncommon
--------------	----------------------------	----------

Gulls--Family Laridae

California Gull	<i>Larus californicus</i>	Uncommon
-----------------	---------------------------	----------

Western Gull	<i>Larus occidentalis</i>	Uncommon
--------------	---------------------------	----------

Murrelets--Family Alcidae

Marbled Murrelet	<i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i>	Uncommon
------------------	---------------------------------	----------

Vulture--Family Cathartidae

Turkey Vulture	<i>Cathartes aura</i>	Common
----------------	-----------------------	--------

Hawks, Eagles--Family Accipitridae

Golden Eagle	<i>Aquila chrysaetos</i>	Rare
--------------	--------------------------	------

Bald Eagle	<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>	Rare
Black-shouldered Kite	<i>Elanus caeruleus</i>	Rare
Northern Harrier	<i>Circus cyaneus</i>	Rare
Sharp-shinned Hawk	<i>Accipiter striatus</i>	Uncommon
Cooper's Hawk	<i>Accipiter cooperii</i>	Uncommon
Northern Goshawk	<i>Accipiter gentilis</i>	Rare
Red-tailed Hawk	<i>Buteo jamaicensis</i>	Common
Osprey	<i>Pandion haliaetus</i>	Uncommon
American Kestrel	<i>Falco sparverius</i>	Uncommon
Merlin	<i>Falco columbarius</i>	Rare
Peregrine Falcon	<i>Falco peregrinus</i>	Rare
Grouse, Quail--Family Phasianidae		
Ruffed Grouse	<i>Bonasa umbellus</i>	Common
Blue Grouse	<i>Dendragapus obscurus</i>	Uncommon
California Quail	<i>Callipepla californica</i>	Common
Mountain Quail	<i>Oreortyx pictus</i>	Common
Wild Turkey	<i>Meleagris gallopavo</i>	Uncommon-Exotic
Pigeons, Doves--Family Columbidae		
Band-tailed Pigeon	<i>Columba fasciata</i>	Uncommon
Rock Dove	<i>Columba livia</i>	Uncommon-Exotic
Mourning Dove	<i>Zenaida macroura</i>	Uncommon
Owls--Family Tytoidae		
Common Barn-Owl	<i>Tyto alba</i>	Uncommon
Owls--Family Strigidae		
Great Horned Owl	<i>Bubo virginianus</i>	Common
Barred Owl	<i>Strix varia</i>	Rare
Northern Spotted Owl	<i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i>	Uncommon
Western Screech Owl	<i>Otus kennicottii</i>	Uncommon
Northern Pygmy-Owl	<i>Glaucidium gnoma</i>	Uncommon
Northern Saw-whet Owl	<i>Aegolius acadicus</i>	Uncommon
Nightjars--Family Caprimulgidae		
Common Nighthawk	<i>Chordeiles minor</i>	Rare
Swifts--Family Apodidae		
Vaux's Swift	<i>Chaetura vauxi</i>	Common
Hummingbird--Family Trochilidae		
Anna's Hummingbird	<i>Calypte anna</i>	Rare
Calliope Hummingbird	<i>Stellula calliope</i>	Uncommon
Rufous Hummingbird	<i>Selasphorus rufus</i>	Common
Allen's Hummingbird	<i>Selasphorus sasin</i>	Uncommon
Kingfisher--Family Alcedinidae		
Belted Kingfisher	<i>Ceryle alcyon</i>	Common
Woodpeckers--Family Picidae		
Northern Flicker	<i>Colaptes auratus</i>	Common
Acorn Woodpecker	<i>Melanerpes formicivorus</i>	Rare
Red-breasted Sapsucker	<i>Sphyrapicus ruber</i>	Uncommon
Downy Woodpecker	<i>Picoides pubescens</i>	Uncommon
Hairy Woodpecker	<i>Picoides villosus</i>	Uncommon
Pileated Woodpecker	<i>Dryocopus pileatus</i>	Uncommon
Tyrant Flycatchers--Family Tyrannidae		
Western Kingbird	<i>Tyrannus verticalis</i>	Uncommon
Olive-sided Flycatcher	<i>Contopus borealis</i>	Common

Western Wood-Pewee	<i>Contopus sordidulus</i>	Common
Black Phoebe	<i>Sayornis nigricans</i>	Rare
Empidonax Flycatchers--Family Tyrannidae		
Dusky Flycatcher	<i>Empidonax oberholseri</i>	Uncommon
Hammond's Flycatcher	<i>Empidonax hammondi</i>	Uncommon
Willow Flycatcher	<i>Empidonax trailii</i>	Uncommon
Pacific Slope Flycatcher	<i>Empidonax difficilis</i>	Common
Swallows--Family Hirundinidae		
Tree Swallow	<i>Tachycineta bicolor</i>	Common
Violet-green Swallow	<i>Tachycineta thalassina</i>	Common
Purple Martin	<i>Progne subis</i>	Rare
Northern Rough-winged Swallow	<i>Stelgidopteryx serripennis</i>	Uncommon
Cliff Swallow	<i>Hirundo pyrrhonota</i>	Common
Barn Swallow	<i>Hirundo rustica</i>	Common
Jays, Crow, Raven--Family Corvidae		
Scrub Jay	<i>Aphelocoma coerulescens</i>	Uncommon
Steller's Jay	<i>Cyanocitta stelleri</i>	Common
Gray Jay	<i>Perisoreus canadensis</i>	Rare
American Crow	<i>Corvus brachyrhynchos</i>	Uncommon
Common Raven	<i>Corvus corax</i>	Common
Wrentit--Family Muscicapidae		
Wrentit	<i>Chamaea fasciata</i>	Common
Chickadees--Family Paridae		
Black-capped Chickadee	<i>Parus atricapillus</i>	Common
Mountain Chickadee	<i>Parus gambeli</i>	Rare
Chestnut-backed Chickadee	<i>Parus rufescens</i>	Common
Bushtit--Family Aegithalidae		
Bushtit	<i>Psaltriparus minimus</i>	Common
Creepers--Family Certhiidae		
Brown Creeper	<i>Certhia americana</i>	Uncommon
Nuthatches--Family Sittidae		
White-breasted Nuthatch	<i>Sitta carolinensis</i>	Rare
Red-breasted Nuthatch	<i>Sitta canadensis</i>	Common
Wrens--Family Troglodytidae		
House Wren	<i>Troglodytes aedon</i>	Uncommon
Winter Wren	<i>Troglodytes troglodytes</i>	Common
Bewick's Wren	<i>Thryomanes bewickii</i>	Uncommon
Marsh Wren	<i>Cistothorus palustris</i>	Uncommon
Rock Wren	<i>Salpinctes obsoletus</i>	Rare
Thrushes--Family Muscicapidae		
Golden-crowned Kinglet	<i>Regulus satrapa</i>	Common
Ruby-crowned Kinglet	<i>Regulus calendula</i>	Common
Western Bluebird	<i>Sialia mexicana</i>	Uncommon
Townsend's Solitaire	<i>Myadestes townsendi</i>	Uncommon
Swainson's Thrush	<i>Catharus ustulatus</i>	Common
Hermit Thrush	<i>Catharus guttatus</i>	Common
Varied Thrush	<i>Ixoreus naevius</i>	Common
American Robin	<i>Turdus migratorius</i>	Common
Shrike--Family Laniidae		
Loggerhead Shrike	<i>Lanius ludovicianus</i>	Rare
Pipit--Family Motacillidae		

Water Pipit	<i>Anthus spinoletta</i>	Rare
Dipper--Family Cinclidae		
American Dipper	<i>Cinclus mexicanus</i>	Common
Waxwing--Family Bombycillidae		
Cedar Waxwing	<i>Bombycilla cedrorum</i>	Common
Starling--Family Sturnidae		
European Starling	<i>Sturnus vulgaris</i>	Uncommon-Exotic
Vireos--Family Vireonidae		
Hutton's Vireo	<i>Vireo huttoni</i>	Uncommon
Solitary Vireo	<i>Vireo solitarius</i>	Uncommon
Warbling Vireo	<i>Vireo gilvus</i>	Common
Warblers, Sparrows--Family Emberizidae		
Orange-crowned Warbler	<i>Vermivora celata</i>	Common
Nashville Warbler	<i>Vermivora ruficapilla</i>	Uncommon
Yellow-rumped Warbler	<i>Dendroica coronata</i>	Common
Black-throated Gray Warbler	<i>Dendroica nigrescens</i>	Common
Townsend's Warbler	<i>Dendroica townsendi</i>	Uncommon
Hermit Warbler	<i>Dendroica occidentalis</i>	Common
Yellow Warbler	<i>Dendroica petechia</i>	Uncommon
MacGillivray's Warbler	<i>Oporornis tolmiei</i>	Common
Wilson's Warbler	<i>Wilsonia pusilla</i>	Common
Common Yellowthroat	<i>Geothlypis trichas</i>	Uncommon
Yellow-breasted Chat	<i>Icteria virens</i>	Rare
Black-headed Grosbeak	<i>Pheucticus melanocephalus</i>	Common
Lazuli Bunting	<i>Passerina amoena</i>	Uncommon
Rufous-sided Towhee	<i>Pipilo erythrophthalmus</i>	Common
Savannah Sparrow	<i>Passerculus sandwichensis</i>	Uncommon
Song Sparrow	<i>Melospiza melodia</i>	Common
Chipping Sparrow	<i>Spizella passerina</i>	Common
Dark-eyed Junco	<i>Junco hyemalis</i>	Common
White-throated Sparrow	<i>Zonotrichia albicollis</i>	Rare
White-crowned Sparrow	<i>Zonotrichia leucophrys</i>	Common
Golden-crowned Sparrow	<i>Zonotrichia atricapilla</i>	Common
Fox Sparrow	<i>Passerella iliaca</i>	Common
Lincoln's Sparrow	<i>Melospiza lincolnii</i>	Uncommon
Western Meadowlark	<i>Sturnella neglecta</i>	Uncommon
Red-winged Blackbird	<i>Agelaius phoeniceus</i>	Uncommon
Brewer's Blackbird	<i>Euphagus cyanocephalus</i>	Uncommon
Brown-headed Cowbird	<i>Molothrus ater</i>	Uncommon
Northern Oriole	<i>Icterus galbula</i>	Rare
Western Tanager	<i>Piranga ludoviciana</i>	Common
Weaver--Family Passeridae		
English House Sparrow	<i>Passer domesticus</i>	Common-Exotic
Finches--Family Fringillidae		
Pine Siskin	<i>Carduelis pinus</i>	Common
American Goldfinch	<i>Carduelis tristis</i>	Common
Lesser Goldfinch	<i>Carduelis psaltria</i>	Rare
Red Crossbill	<i>Loxia curvirostra</i>	Uncommon
Purple Finch	<i>Carpodacus purpureus</i>	Uncommon
Cassin's Finch	<i>Carpodacus cassinii</i>	Rare
House Finch	<i>Carpodacus mexicanus</i>	Uncommon

Evening Grosbeak *Coccothraustes vespertinus* Common

Mammals--

Family Didelphidae

Opossum *Didelphis virginiana* Occasional

Family Soricidae

Vagrant shrew *Sorex vagrans* Status Unknown
 Pacific shrew *Sorex pacificus* Status Unknown
 Trowbridge shrew *Sorex trowbridgii* Common
 Dusky shrew *Sorex obscurus* Status Unknown

Family Talpidae

Shrew-mole *Neurotrichus gibbsii* Common
 Townsend mole *Scapanus townsendii* Common
 Coast mole *Scapanus orarius* Common

Family Vespertilionidae

Little brown myotis *Myotis lucifugus* Status Unknown
 Yuma myotis *Myotis yumanensis* Status Unknown
 Long-eared myotis *Myotis evotis* Status Unknown
 Long-legged myotis *Myotis volans* Status Unknown
 California myotis *Myotis californicus* Common
 Fringed myotis *Myotis thysanodes* Status Unknown
 Silver-haired bat *Lasionycteris noctivagans* Common
 Big brown bat *Eptesicus fuscus* Status Unknown
 Hoary bat *Lasiurus cinereus* Status Unknown
 Pacific western big-eared bat *Plecotus townsendii* Status Unknown
 Pallid bat *Antrozous pallidus* Status Unknown

Family Ursidae

Black bear *Ursus americanus* Common

Family Procyonidae

Raccoon *Procyon lotor* Common

Family Bassariscidae

Ringtail *Bassariscus astutus* Occasional

Family Mustelidae

American marten *Martes americana* Occasional
 Pacific fisher *Martes pennanti* Rare
 Shorttail weasel *Mustela erminea* Common
 Longtail weasel *Mustela frenata* Occasional
 Mink *Mustela vison* Common
 River otter *Lutra canadensis* Common
 Spotted skunk *Spilogale putorius* Abundant
 Striped skunk *Mephitis mephitis* Common

Family Canidae

Coyote *Canis latrans* Common
 Gray fox *Urocyon cinereoargenteus* Rare

Family Felidae

Mountain lion *Felis concolor* Occasional
 Bobcat *Lynx rufus* Common

Family Aplodontidae

Mountain beaver *Aplodontia rufa* Common

Family Sciuridae

California ground squirrel *Citellus beecheyi* Common

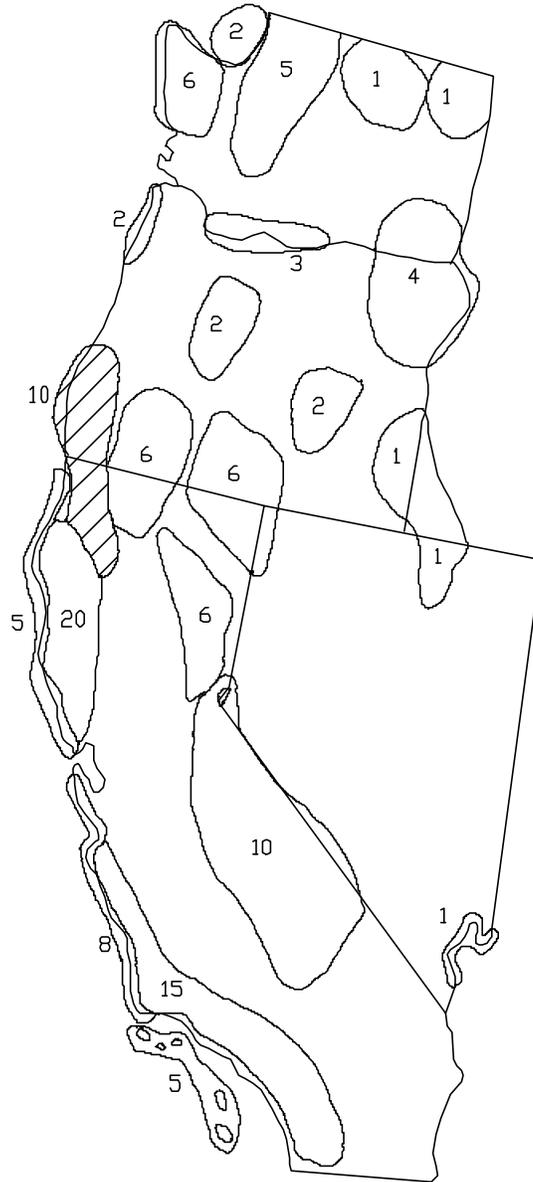
Townsend chipmunk	<i>Eutamias townsendii</i>	Abundant
Western gray squirrel	<i>Sciurus griseus</i>	Common
Douglas squirrel (chickaree)	<i>Tamiasciurus douglasi</i>	Abundant
Northern flying squirrel	<i>Glaucomys sabrinus</i>	Common
Family Castoridae		
Beaver	<i>Castor canadensis</i>	Common
Family Cricetidae		
Deer mouse	<i>Peromyscus maniculatus</i>	Abundant
Dusky-footed woodrat	<i>Neotoma fuscipes</i>	Common
Bushy-tailed woodrat	<i>Neotoma cinerea</i>	Common
White-footed vole	<i>Phenacomys albipes</i>	Status Unknown
Red tree vole	<i>Phenacomys longicaudus</i>	Status Unknown
Western red-backed vole	<i>Clethrionomys occidentalis</i>	Status Unknown
California vole	<i>Microtus californicus</i>	Status Unknown
Townsend vole	<i>Microtus townsendi</i>	Status Unknown
Longtail vole	<i>Microtus longicaudus</i>	Status Unknown
Oregon vole	<i>Microtus oregoni</i>	Status Unknown
Muskrat	<i>Ondatra zibethica</i>	Occasional
Family Muridae		
Norway rat	<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>	Status Unknown-Exotic
Black rat	<i>Rattus rattus</i>	Status Unknown-Exotic
House mouse	<i>Mus musculus</i>	Status Unknown-Exotic
Family Zapodidae		
Pacific jumping mouse	<i>Zapus trinotatus</i>	Occasional
Family Erethizontidae		
Porcupine	<i>Erethizon dorsatum</i>	Common
Family Leporidae		
Brush rabbit	<i>Sylvilagus bachmani</i>	Common
Family Cervidae		
Roosevelt elk	<i>Cervus canadensis</i>	Occasional
Black-tailed deer	<i>Odocoileus hemionus</i>	Common

Appendix F: Peregrine Falcon Recovery Plan Objectives

The proposals that follow are believed to be necessary to restore the Pacific Coast population of the American peregrine falcon to a secure, self-sustaining status. A "self-sustaining" population is one whose natural productivity is equal to or greater than its mortality, without human management. Based on available data the minimum number of known self-sustaining wild pairs required for consideration of delisting the peregrine are: California, 120 pairs; Oregon, 30 pairs; Washington, 30 pairs; and Nevada, 5 pairs. This totals 185 active pairs for the Pacific States region. The minimum productivity for this number of pairs should be an average of 1.5 fledged young per active territory per year over at least a five year period. This productivity level is a Recovery Team best estimate based on review of other population reproductive rates (Hickey and Anderson 1969, Nelson 1977, Newton 1979a, Rattcliffe 1980) and estimates of rates required to maintain a stable population (Enderson 1969b, Young 1969). A variety of recovery indicators will be determined (e.g. DDE residue levels, coastal population productivity). Distribution within the Pacific States must be as widespread as possible within the historical range. The following is a map showing peregrine breeding management units and minimum number of active pairs as a recovery goal for each unit. These units represent geographic areas either known to be occupied or that were historically occupied and are still suitable for peregrines. Nest sites within each of these zones are physiographically and ecologically similar, and hence provide convenient management units. These minimum active nest site numbers do not equal the recovery goal. At such time that all minimum numbers are reached (totaling 122), then the Pacific Coast population may be considered for reclassification to Threatened status. Once all minimum numbers are met, a fledging success average of 1.5 per active pair is achieved, and the total number of known pairs reaches 185 for the Pacific States, then the species may be considered for total delisting. The minimum numbers of pairs per management unit, the total known numbers of pairs, and the appropriate average fledging success must be met prior to delisting. These numbers may be revised up or down as the species recovers, and its population ecology is better understood.

Basic needs to meet the objective of the Recovery Plan are to maintain sufficient habitat for a breeding population of 185 pairs, increase and maintain the productivity of individual pairs, decrease mortality at all age levels as much as possible, preserve migratory and winter habitat, and artificially supplement the number of birds entering the population until the breeding population of 185 pairs is achieved. In addition, an ongoing monitoring program is desirable to identify changes in the population and to measure the success of various protection and management programs. Peregrine young introduced into the wild should be the progeny of Pacific anatum stock to the greatest extent possible. Peregrines of uncertain or nonresident lineage should be avoided in this reintroduction program. Also, hacking efforts of anatum peregrines should be made in natural nesting habitat unless such habitats are shown to be unavailable or unsuitable. Natural nesting habitat is any historically known type of habitat (e.g. cliffs, islands, buildings, cavities of large trees). Urban release sites can add to the recovery of the wild populations. Survival of young from urban hack sites is greater than at wild hack sites, and the urban-released young probably recruit into the wild as well as establish in urban environments (Cade, T.J. and P.R. Dague 1981). Our goal, however, is to establish wild nest sites to the greatest extent possible.

Pacific Peregrine Falcon Management Units



Numbers represent the minimum number of pairs required in each unit before reclassification to Threatened status (Pacific Coast Recovery Plan for the American Peregrine Falcon, 1982).

**Appendix G: Pacific Bald Eagle Recovery Plan
Site-Specific Tasks for Zone 23. California/Oregon Coast**

The following are listed as the "most urgent" site specific tasks for bald eagle recovery in Zone 23: (pg. 133, Pacific Bald Eagle Recovery Plan)

1.32 MAINTAIN AND IMPROVE FORESTED HABITAT IN BOTH THE BREEDING AND WINTERING RANGE

Timber stands should be managed to promote habitat characteristics required by eagles for long-term nesting and roosting. In most cases, this requires management for old-growth stands. Silvicultural techniques, such as thinning or selective harvest, can help to create proper tree species composition and stand structure. The important element of any silvicultural plan should be to maintain an old growth overstory in the vicinity of nest sites and communal roosts. Development and maintenance of potential eagle habitat is as important as protection and maintenance of habitat currently used by eagles.

1.3211-- PROHIBIT LOGGING OF KNOWN NEST TREES, PERCH TREES, AND WINTER ROOST TREES

Trees used by eagles should be clearly identified and protected from logging. In addition, trees that provide wind breaks, that visually shield eagles from disturbances, or that are needed for long-term viability of eagle use areas must be maintained. Trees with unoccupied nests in suitable habitat and trees which formerly had nests should also be protected because these sites are sometimes used after several years of abandonment and will be important in providing habitat for expanding populations.

1.3215-- PRESERVE SNAGS IN EAGLE USE AREAS

All snags that are potential eagle perches within 500 m (1650 ft) of nests or roosts should be preserved. In addition, all snags utilized for roosting or foraging within nesting territories or communal roosts should be protected.

1.331-- ESTABLISH BUFFER ZONES AROUND NEST SITES

Buffer zones should be established for individual nest territories based on the location of nest trees, perch trees, and flight paths, as well as stand characteristics, known individual tolerances, and weather patterns.

Until site specific plans are available or until guidelines can be developed by local groups or agencies, guidelines prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Region I should serve as minimum protective measures.

1.332 EXCLUDE LOGGING, CONSTRUCTION, HABITAT IMPROVEMENT, AND OTHER ACTIVITIES DURING CRITICAL PERIODS OF EAGLE USE

Picnicking, camping, blasting, firearm use, timber harvest, and low level aircraft operations should not be allowed within 400 m of nests and roosts during periods of eagle use. These activities should also be regulated up to 800 m from nests and roosts where eagles have line-of-sight vision. Critical nesting periods vary throughout the recovery area but generally fall between 1 January and 31 August. Key wintering areas need protection from disturbance from approximately 15 November to 15 March.

1.333 PROHIBIT BUILDING CONSTRUCTION NEAR KEY BALD EAGLE NESTING AND WINTERING HABITATS.

Permanent structures that are occupied during periods of eagle use should not be constructed near nesting or winter use areas. Buildings should be no closer than 400 m from the shorelines of feeding waters. Wooded summer campgrounds and small farming operations are probably compatible with winter eagle use, but campgrounds in most wintering areas should be closed from November to March.

1.334 PROHIBIT VEHICLE TRAFFIC AT SENSITIVE KEY AREAS DURING PERIODS OF EAGLE USE

Snowmobile, boat, and automobile traffic can disturb eagles in some areas. Roads should be closed to protect nesting areas, when appropriate, and snowmobiles should be prohibited from traveling near nesting and wintering habitat during periods of eagle use.

Land use plans should guide human activity away from important feeding perches and prevent human disturbance in nesting and roosting areas.

Buoys and booms can be used to channel boat traffic away from sensitive eagle use areas. At Shasta Lake, California, this approach, in combination with shoreline signing and recreational maps, has reduced conflicts between eagles and recreationists (Detric pers. comm.).

The impacts of automobile traffic can be lessened if people remain in their vehicles. In addition, eagles may grow accustomed to the presence of humans at certain locations. Appropriate signs at these viewing points could educate the viewing public about bald eagle ecology and management.

3.2 PROVIDE FOR ADEQUATE STATE AND FEDERAL EAGLE PROTECTION EFFORTS

Eagles are now protected by a variety of state and federal laws including the Migratory Bird Treaty Act of 1918, the Lacey Act, and 1940 Bald and Golden Eagle Protection Act, and the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended. Law enforcement agents and agency lawyers must have latitude to prosecute specific cases under the most appropriate law. The Division of Law Enforcement, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and individual state enforcement agencies should work in close cooperation while investigating and prosecuting illegal activity involving bald eagles.

3.3 PROVIDE SEASONAL SURVEILLANCE AT SELECTED HABITATS WHERE EAGLES ARE VULNERABLE TO HUMAN DISTURBANCE OR HARASSMENT

At some nest sites, roosting areas and other use areas, bald eagles may be vulnerable to detrimental disturbances by people walking, in land vehicles, or in boats. Assigning guards to nest or roost areas at critical times of the year may be necessary to avert disturbances that could result in birds being killed or abandoning a nest or roost site. Responsibilities of site attendants might include: identifying sources of disturbance, providing local public relations, discouraging people from entering especially sensitive areas, summoning law enforcement aid in emergencies, and collecting biological data.

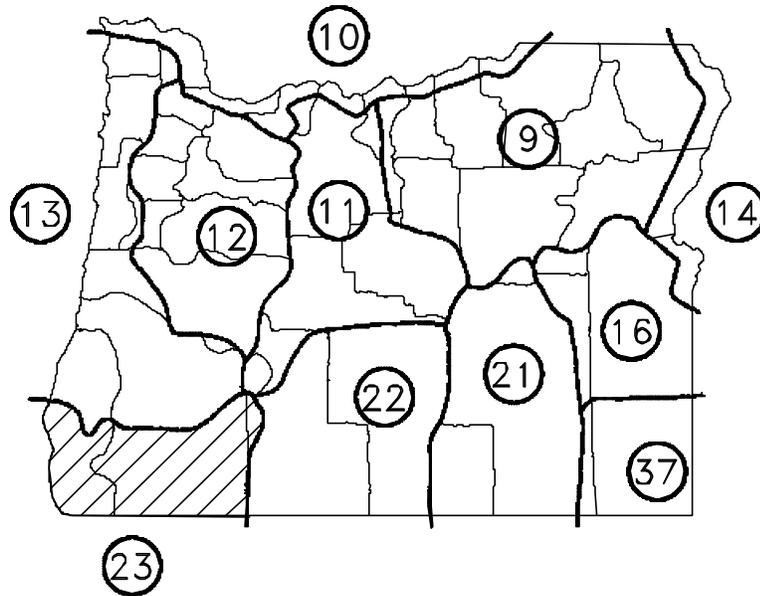
4.11 REDUCE BALD EAGLE MORTALITY ASSOCIATED WITH SHOOTING AND TRAPPING

Shooting continues to be the most common cause of bald eagle mortality. Uncontrolled shooting could easily lead to the decimation of nesting and/or wintering populations in local areas. Aggressive law enforcement and public information and education programs (see Sec. 3.2) will be the most effective way to reduce shooting and trapping mortality. It also may be necessary to control or regulate public access in areas where shooting or trapping problems have been identified. Roads should be closed in some areas during critical periods of eagle use. Nest wardens may be required at nests near human population or recreation centers (see 3.3). Habitat management techniques (see 1.32) should also be used in these cases to keep eagles away from hazardous situations.

4.121 RESTRICT USE OF POISONS DETRIMENTAL TO EAGLES IN PREDATOR AND RODENT CONTROL PROGRAMS WITHIN IMPORTANT BALD EAGLE NESTING AND WINTERING HABITAT

Rodent and jack rabbit control with strychnine has been identified as a recurring cause of bald eagle mortality, and compound 1080 has been responsible for at least one bald eagle death in the West (National Wildlife Health Laboratory 1985). Extreme caution should be taken whenever control programs are initiated in traditional eagle use areas. If it is determined that bald eagles feed in the area, the control program should be disallowed or structured in such a way as to have no effect on eagles. Safer, alternative chemicals should be considered. If existing regulations are inadequate to protect the bald eagle, new legislation or regulations should be encouraged.

**Appendix H: Bald Eagle Recovery Zone Boundaries for Oregon
(Working Implementation Plan for Bald Eagle Recovery in Oregon and Washington, 1990)**



- 9 = Blue Mountains
- 10 = Columbia River
- 11 = High Cascades
- 12 = Willamette Basin
- 13 = Oregon Coast
- 14 = Snake River Canyon
- 16 = Boise Valley
- 21 = Harney Basin/Warner Mountains
- 22 = Klamath Basin
- 23 = California/Oregon Coast**
- 37 = Great Basin

Appendix I: Habitat Enhancement Projects

Wildlife Tree Topping

1985 --Lost Elk #5-5 trees

1987 --Black Lairdberry #1-4 trees
--Black Lairdberry #3-7 trees
--Black Lairdberry #4- 4 trees
--Panther Return #4-4 trees

1988 --Mt. Wells #1-11 trees
--Mt. Wells #2-3 trees
--Panther Return #3-6 trees
--Panther Return #4-3 trees
--Panther Return #5-8 trees

1990 --Mt. Wells #3-5 trees
--Mt. Wells #4-7 trees
--Iron Sucker #4-2 trees
--Bald Mt. Meadows-28 trees

1995 --Father Oak #14-4 trees
--Father Oak #17-8 trees

TOTAL: 111 TREES TOPPED

Aerial Forage Seeding

1979 --Oak Ridge #1-9 acres
--Oak Ridge #2-17 acres
--Oak Ridge #3-41 acres
--Father Sky #1-10 acres
--Mt. Wells #1-60 acres

1982 --Lost Elk U-2-32 acres

1987 --Mt. Wells ?-15 acres

1988 --Panther Return #5-46 acres
--Blacklairdberry #3-30 acres
--Black Lairdberry #4-14 acres

1990 --Mt. Wells #4-20 acres

TOTAL: 294 ACRES TREATED

Appendix J: Data Used to Support Analysis

Landslide Inventory: McHugh (1986) identified and measured landslides and other slope features from seven sets of historical aerial photographs covering 1943 through 1979, on National Forest lands. McHugh updated these data for 1979 through 1986 using the same inventory methods (McHugh, 1988, pers. comm.). Debris slides, debris avalanches, failing toes of slumps and earthflows, and debris flows that were active during this period were inventoried. Information collected on the 223 slides within Elk River included area, slope, aspect, elevation, rock type, percentage delivery to streams, and photo-bracketed date of failure. The relation of the slides to harvest units or road construction was noted, and the date of such disturbance was recorded. Area, depth and percent delivery to stream channels were measured in the field for 25 percent of the landslides. A relation between photo-interpreted area and field-measured volume was used to estimate volumes for slides that were not field-verified.

Landslide Sediment Delivery Projections: Estimates of future landslide sediment delivery are based on past numbers, volumes, and timing of slides following road construction and timber harvest.

Although there is evidence that improved land use practices result in decreased numbers of landslides, these estimates are based on old practices, particularly for road construction. For newer roads constructed between 1979 and 1986, no road-related landslides larger than the minimum detectable size (100 sq meters) have been observed. However, this sample includes only 0.7 miles on high and 3.8 miles on moderate watershed sensitivity. The natural landslide rate increased slightly for 1979-86 over that for 1973-79, which may be attributed to the 1982 storm (Figure 24). In comparison, Figure 24 shows a considerable decrease in the rate of harvest-related landslides over this period, partially due to a decrease in acres harvested, improved land management practices, and different timing of storm events. The rate of road-related landslides increased considerably, but all were from roads constructed prior to 1979.

The mean volume of road-related landslides during 1955-1969 was 2553 cubic yards, and during 1970-1986 decreased by 44%. During this latter time period, new roads were located further away from streams and the practice of sidestepping sediment on steep slopes was discontinued. The average percentage of sediment delivered from road-related slides is lower than from natural or harvest-related slides which are closer to streams (McHugh, 1987). An unsubstantiated observation of road-related slides suggest that they occur with a higher density in harvested areas. Roads on high and moderate watershed sensitivity land delivered 13 times as much sediment per acre as harvest on high watershed sensitivity land (1952-1986). The mean volume of harvest-related landslides during 1955-1969 was 2510 cubic yards, and during 1970-1986 decreased by 42%.

The number of years between road construction or timber harvest and each landslide was used to construct a "susceptibility curve" to estimate landslide timing. The methods are described in a draft report in the process records entitled "Estimating volumes of landslide sediment production and delivery from forested watersheds:" by Luce, C.H. and Ricks, C.L.

Road Drainage Erosion: Road drainage erosion was sampled on 4.25 miles (74 drainage outlets) for three rock types in 1992. Most of the eroded sediment was redeposited on the slope before entering a drainage. The average distance between the drainage outlet and deposit was 20 feet. Sediment entered streams from erosion only where the drainage outlet was in or within 20 feet of a natural drainage. The relatively high rock fragment content in the soils that were sampled allow rapid infiltration and dissipation of energy. Finer-textured soils on Galice mudstones or altered diorite are expected to develop deeper, longer gullies. Three landslides were also located in association with the drainage outlets.

Channel Network Expansion: Based on inventory of 74 road drainage outlets, the mean ditch distance to the nearest drainage outlet(s) was 346 feet. The number of drainage crossings was counted from overlaying the road and stream networks. Because the smallest streams in the network are interpreted from maps and aerial photos rather than field mapping, these values are approximate. The miles in this road network were obtained from an older Transportation Information System (TIS) database and additional non-system road miles, and differ from later estimates cited elsewhere in this document.

drainage crossings x mean ditch distance to outlet = Road drainage distance

Percent channel network expansion = $\frac{\text{(Road drainage distance)}}{\text{(Road drainage + channel distance)}}$

	Elk River above hatchery	Milbury Creek
Area (sq mi)	73.4	0.81
System/Nonsystem Roads (mi)	169	4.1
Channel Distance (mi)	440	4.0
# drainage crossings	314	19

Appendix K: Methods Used to Determine Optimum Female Escapement Goals

Chinook

I utilized an ODFW data set from 1985 to 1992. I numerically plotted the amount of female spawners versus the amount of smolts produced the following year, I was able to see an increase in smolt production correlated with female escapement until a peak was reached. After the peak, increases of returning females did not increase juvenile abundance (they actually decreased). From this data, I determined the optimum number of female spawners to be 2,800 to 3,100 fish. (See graph following page)

Coho, Steelhead and Cutthroat

I calculated the amount of available habitat using the Habitat Quality Index (HQI) in ODFW's Steelhead Management Plan 1986-1992 to determine optimum numbers of female escapement. Where a borderline call of adequate and available habitat was questionable, I tended to overrate the habitat.

Species	Avail. Habitat	HQI	Females/Mile	Optimum
Coho salmon	9 miles	3	14.8	133 females
Winter steelhead	30 miles	5	23.0	690 females
Cutthroat trout	45 miles	5	23.0	1035 females

Insert Max's Graph Female Chinook vs. Juvenile Production

Appendix L: Elk River Cultural Resource Summary

DESCRIPTION

The Elk River flows westerly into the Pacific Ocean just north of Port Orford on the southern Oregon coast. The River is approximately 32 miles long and drains a watershed of about 60 thousand acres between the Rogue River and the Coquille River drainages. The lower 12 miles are a broad flat grassy valley on private land outside the Siskiyou National Forest boundary. The upper 20 miles and 49,200 acres are within the Siskiyou National Forest. Most of this land is steep with narrow canyons. Vegetative cover is mostly Douglas-fir trees, both old growth and second growth. The understory is abundant heavy brush. The area is covered by the Port Orford, and Agness quadrangle maps of the U.S. Geological Survey.

Before the coming of the white man this area was inhabited by the Quatomah band of the Tututni group of Athabascan Indians. There were settlements in the Floras Lake, Sixes River, Eckley (Dement Ranch), Elk River, and Port Orford areas. The Sixes River was used more heavily than the Elk; and the lower 12 miles of the Elk River more heavily than the upper 20 miles.

Three main trails ran east-west through what is now the Siskiyou National Forest:

- 1) Up the Sixes River and over the prairies to Baker & Rowland Creeks, or down Salmon Creek to the Powers area;
- 2) Up the Elk River to the only easy ridge north, onto the Sixes/Elk divide, then east over Barklow Mtn. onto Johnson Mtn. and thence to the Powers area;
- 3) From Port Orford over Bald Mountain & Rocky Peak, then along the Elk/Rogue divide to Iron Mountain, then to either Illahe or Agness.

Two trails ran north-south connecting these trail systems:

- 1) A trail 4 miles west of the Forest boundary joined the lower Elk River with the Sixes River;
- 2) A trail north from Iron Mountain along the ridgeline over Barklow Mountain joined the 3 main trails.

White settlers & miners started moving into the area in the early 1850's. Almost all the Indians were removed north to reservations at Siletz and Grand Rhonde, after the war of 1855-56.

At least two mines operated in the middle Elk River area. The Elkhorn and Sunshine Mines are shown on the 1934 General Land Office survey map. The miners used the early Indian trails and built some of their own.

In 1909 when the Siskiyou National Forest was organized into districts, Bill Milbury, the first ranger, established a Ranger Station at a place that became known as McGribble. The Forest Service maintained some of the old trails, did some selective logging in the early years, and started building some roads. After World War II, the Forest Service started intensively managing timber and building logging roads.

(For more historical details, see "History Elk River Area").

POTENTIAL

The Siskiyou National Forest, Cultural Resource Sample Survey Design predicts the likelihood of finding cultural resources.

Three categories of probability are identified: high, medium, and low.

The eight factors used to predict probability are: slope, aspect, elevation, soil, fisheries, stream classification, minerals, and vegetation.

The high potential areas are terraces along the Elk River and the lower ends of major tributaries. Medium areas are interspersed along non terrace areas of Elk River, corridors along major tributaries, gently sloping ground, broad ridges, and open or semi-open high peaks. All remaining area is low probability.

Approximate distribution of probability categories:

High probability 5% Medium probability 20% Low probability 75%

Actual finding of sites, both historic and prehistoric, has corresponded well to the predictive model.

INVENTORY OF EXISTING SITES

In 1978 the Forest Service contracted with Steven D. Beckham, Archaeologist and Historian, to do a cultural resource overview of the Siskiyou National Forest. He documented research about the original American Indian inhabitants and the later settlement by whites.

Since the time of the overview and the development of a cultural resource program on the Forest, 13 cultural resource surveys for individual timber sales within the Elk River basin have been done. An additional 6 surveys border the Elk River area. These surveys located and documented 27 cultural resource sites, one of these being prehistoric.

Approximately half the Elk River watershed has been surveyed for cultural resources. An estimated one third of the remaining unsurveyed area is in the Grassy Knob Wilderness.

List of sites by category:

- 1 Prehistoric - waste chert & jasper flakes on a bench along the middle Elk River area.
- 5 USFS fire lookout sites (none now exist)
- 7 USFS trail camps (structures destroyed or in disrepair)
- 1 USFS Ranger Station site (McGribble - no structures remain)
- 5 Cabin sites from early settlers & miners (structures destroyed)
- 7 Trails (all fragmented, none used or maintained)
- 1 Mining site along middle Elk River area

SIGNIFICANCE

None of the historic sites are eligible for the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP). The prehistoric site has not been excavated or analyzed. It has not been nominated for the NRHP nor is it anticipated to be.

It doesn't seem to be a significant site.

We do not anticipate finding any significant cultural resource sites in the Siskiyou National Forest part of the Elk River watershed. No standing historic structures exist on National Forest land in the Elk River area.

TRIBAL RIGHTS - CURRENT USE

The Quatomah Indians are not a recognized tribe. It is unknown if there are any survivors of the group. The area is not used by American Indian groups for any tribal or group purposes.

Community concern for cultural resource values in Elk River has been low. It has not been raised as an issue by the public in any timber sale Environmental Assessment scoping process.

No law enforcement problems related to cultural resources have occurred yet and none are anticipated.

Joe Hallett
Cultural Resource Coordinator
Powers Ranger District
Siskiyou National Forest

Appendix M: Index of Relevant Information, including Maps

At the request of the Siskiyou National Forest in the mid-1980's, researchers from Oregon State University (OSU) and the U.S. Forest Service Pacific Northwest Research Station (PNW) initiated a series of studies on erosion processes, channel form, water temperature, and fish populations. Concurrent with these studies, juvenile fish traps were installed and operated by ODFW to estimate wild anadromous salmonid production in various portions of the basin.

Interviews with local residents

Woodward Oral History - Draft Transcript

Geologic mapping from Curry County upgraded by McHugh, 1987. Polygons available on GIS layer GE3 (Powers RD).

Watershed Sensitivity Mapping by Cindy Ricks - on 1986 aerial photos (Westside Engineering Zone), transferred to GIS layer WS3 (Powers RD).

Landslide maps by McHugh - Hardcopies only (Westside Engineering Zone). Historic landslide inventory on Lotus spreadsheets (Westside Engineering Zone).

Road construction and timber harvest history - Lotus spreadsheets (Westside Engineering Zone), GIS layers (Powers RD).

Streamflow data: Elk River mainstem at Hatchery 1977-1988, and Milbury Creek 1989-1990.

Elk River North and South Forks stream flow - average monthly.

Summer Stream Temperature Monitoring data 1990-1991

Maps of Fish Species Distribution, Significant Fish Habitat Areas, and Productive Stream Reaches (Powers RD).

Chen, Glenn, Elk River Basin Stream Surveys 1986-1990 in Lotus and QuattroPro format. 1984 general stream survey data. Field Data sheets and Observation notebooks for 1986-1991 (PNW Research Station, Corvallis Lab).